

Parents' Guide

Connect

2022

دليل ولي الأمر

PRIMARY FOUR





Contents



Let's remember! Lesson 1



1 What can you see in the photo? Look and say:

ماذا ترى فى الصورة ؟ انظر وقل :



2 Read and match the questions and answers :

اقرأ ثم صل السؤال بإجابته:

1 How tall is the Cairo tower?	a. I visited the bazaar. I bought a bag.
2 What would you like?	b. It's 187 meters.
3 Where are you from?	c. It's on January 19th.
4 What did you do yesterday?	d. I'm from China. I'm Chinese.
5 How long is the Sphinx?	e. It's seventy- three meters long.
6 When's your birthday?	f. I'd like some water, please.

3 Look and write. What is the mystery word in yellow?

انظر واكتب ما هى كلمة السر المظللة باللون الأصفر؟

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

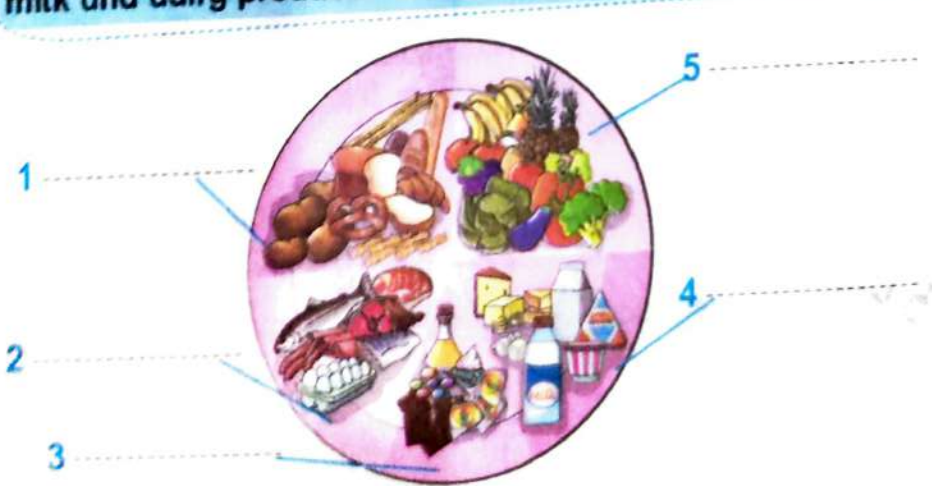
				1 b	r	e	a	d
				2				
				3				
			4					
5								
				6				
	7							
				8				
9								

The mystery word is: --------------

انظر واكتب :

4 Look and write:

bread, cereals and potatoes - fruit and vegetables
milk and dairy products - meat and fish - sugar and fats



5 What is a healthy diet? Look and say:

ماهو النظام الغذائى الصحى؟ انظر وقل :

Lesson 2

★ Lesson 2

1 Read and order :

اقرأ ورتب :

April	◯	March	◯
February	◯	September	◯
June	◯	December	◯
October	◯	July	◯
August	◯	May	◯
January	1	November	◯



2 Listen, answer and write :

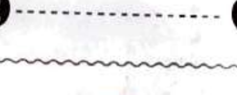


استمع واجب واكتب :






1. It's sunny.
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....



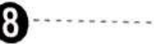







5. ....
6. ....
7. ....
8. ....







3 Write about your weekend. You can use the words below:

اكتب عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الخاصة بك: يمكنك استخدام الكلمات التي بالأسفل:

go - see - buy - have



I went shopping last weekend. I ---------------

I ---

I had a great time!

4 Read and add the correct capital letters:

أقرأ وضف الحروف الكبيرة في مكانها الصحيح :

hi! I'm shorouk! i live in alexandria. the library of alexandria is a big and famous library in my city. yesterday it was sunny. my family visited the park at the montaza palace.







أشعر أنى بخير

Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about foods and how to keep healthy.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن أنواع الطعام المختلفة وكيف يحافظ على صحته.
2. Practice making sentences with and or but.
   - يتدرب الطالب على تكوين جمل باستخدام (و) أو (لكن).
3. Talk about a place in Egypt.
   - يتكلم الطالب عن مكان فى مصر.
4. Read and listen to a short story.
   - يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
5. Distinguish long and short vowels.
   - يفرق الطالب بين الأصوات المتحركة الممتدة والقصيرة.
6. Write instructions.
   - يكتب الطالب تعليمات أو إرشادات.
7. Research and make a presentation.
   - يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وعرض تقديمي.



⋆ Food and drink

Vocabulary

English	Arabic
tomato	ثمرة طماطم
rice	أرز
chicken	دجاجة / لحم دجاج
potato	ثمرة بطاطس
onion*	بصلة
mango	ثمرة مانجو
banana	موزة
grapes	عنب
watermelon	بطيخ
sugarcane	قصب السكر
milk	لبن

Food and drink
الطعام والشراب

Help your child learn about food and drink. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الطعام والشراب.



Meals الوجبات



breakfast الافطار



lunch الغداء



dinner العشاء

Verbs افعال

looks delicious	يبدو لذيذ	raise chickens	يربي دجاج
grow rice	يزرع أرز	produce	ينتج

Other words كلمات أخرى

ready	جاهز	What else?	ماذا ايضًا؟
vegetables	خضراوات	yum	لذيذ
special food	طعام مميز	country	دولة

Definitions تعريفات

raise	يربى	To keep and feed chickens to get eggs and meat.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1. التعبير أن الطعام شهى أو لذيذ

-It looks delicious./ Yum!



2. للاقتراح نستخدم:

Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل

-Let's eat.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

- عند جمع الأسماء نضيف آخر الاسم حرف (s).

banana → bananas   onion → onions

- الأسماء التى تنتهى بالحروف (ch / sh / ss / o / s / x) يضاف آخرها (es) عند الجمع.

mango → mangoes   potato → potatoes

- وهناك أسماء لا تجمع مثل بعض الأطعمة وكل المشروبات:

milk - rice

1 Listen and read: استمع واقرأ:

Mom : Lunch is ready. I made some special food for us.

Maged : Mom, it looks delicious!

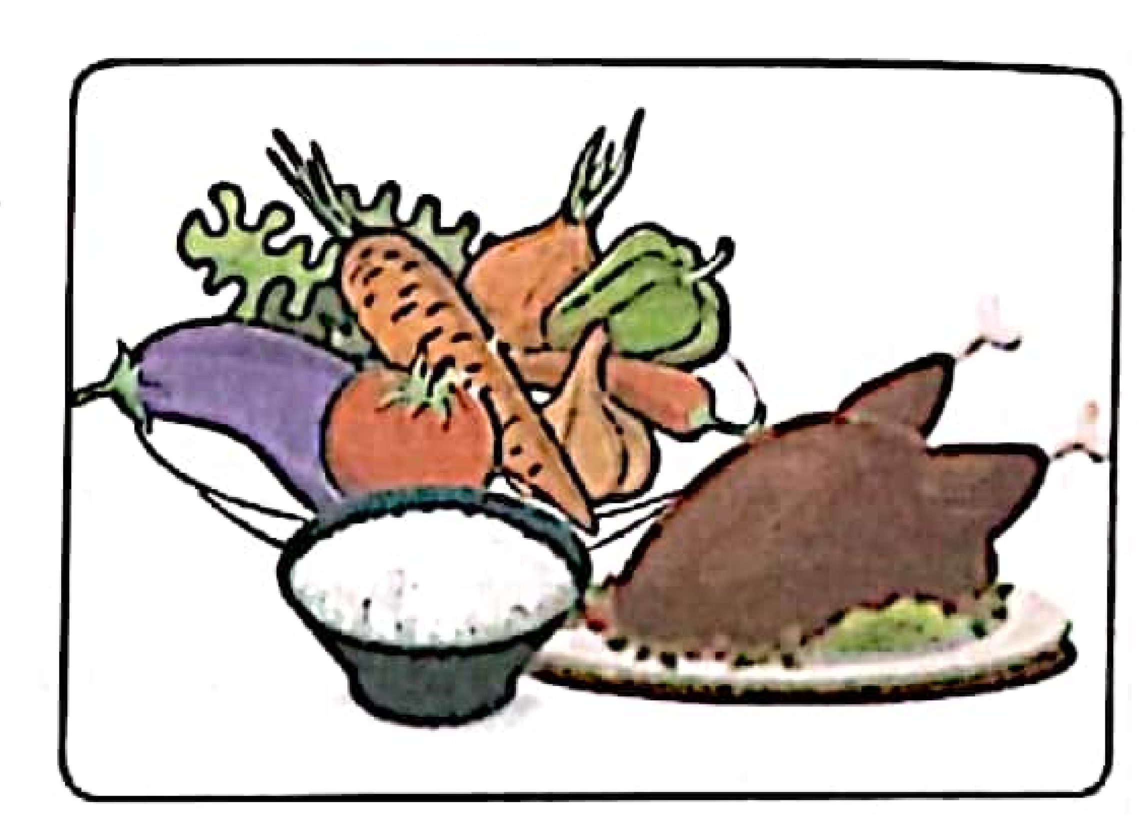
Mom : Which food comes from our country, do you think?

Maged : I think we grow rice in Egypt.

Mom and Maged

Mom : Yes, that's right. What else?

Maged : Hmmm, I think we raise chickens in Egypt.



Mom : Yes, and tomatoes and onions. Egyptian farmers produce many things you see on this table. Let's eat!

Maged : Yum!

2 Listen again and answer the questions:

استمع مرة آخرى واجب عن الاسئلة:

1. What meal are they having?

   a breakfast   b lunch   c dinner

2. What does the verb raise mean?

   a To keep and feed chicken to get eggs and meat.

   b To build houses for chicken to grow healthier.

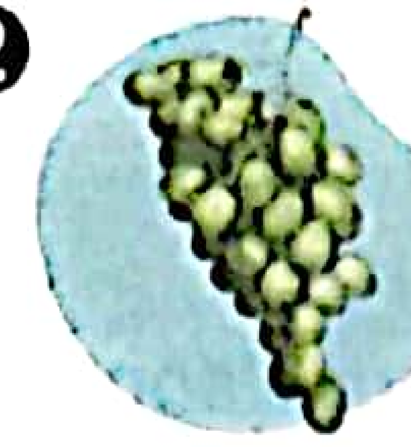
3. What does Maged think about the food?

Help your child listen and answer the questions. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويجيب عن الاسئلة.

3 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

bananas - chicken - grapes - mangoes - milk
onions - potatoes - rice - sugarcane - watermelon

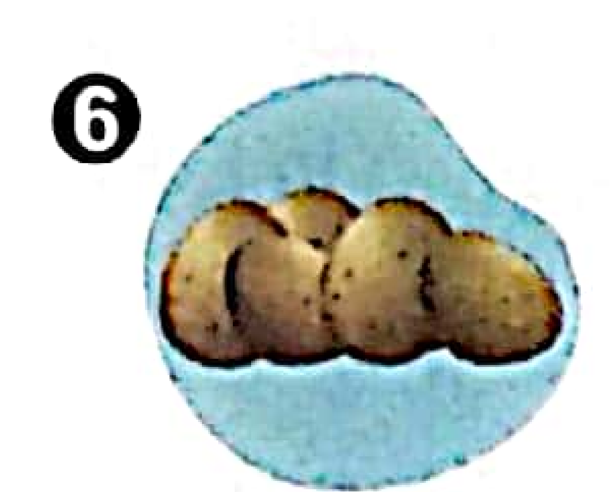
1 
chicken

2  

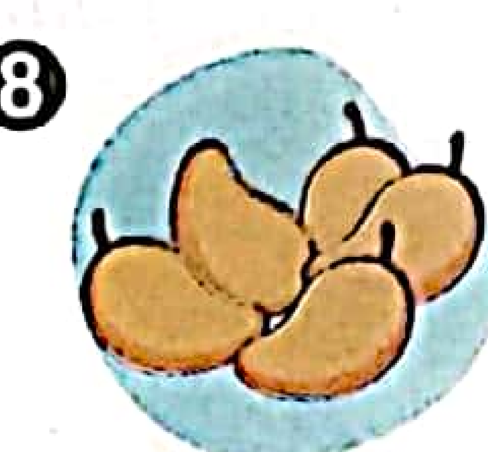
3 

4 

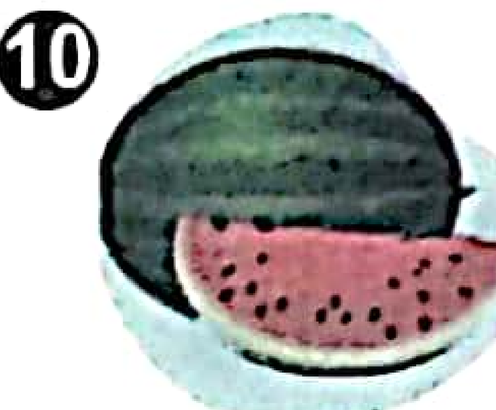
5  

6 

7  

8 

9 

10 

4 Listen, check, and say: استمع وتأكد وقل:

Egyptian farmers raise chickens and sheep.

Find out

What other animals do farmers raise in Egypt?

ما الحيوانات الاخرى التى يربيها المزارعون فى مصر؟

5 Ask and answer. Write in your notebook: اسأل وأجب. اكتب فى كراستك:





Activities



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(food - right - ready - rice)

Mom : Lunch is ❶ ____________ . I made some special food for us.
Magdy : Mom, it looks delicious!
Mom : Which ❷ ____________ comes from our country, do you think?
Magdy : I think we grow ❸ ____________ in Egypt.
Mom : Yes, that's ❹ ____________ .

2 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 What meal are	a. vegetables.
2 We produce	b. delicious!
3 It looks	c. eat.
4 Let's	d. they having?
	e. breakfast.

3 Rearrange the following to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. food - I - some - made - special.

____

2. grow - Egypt - Farmers - in - rice.

____

3. raise - chickens - in - We - Egypt.

____

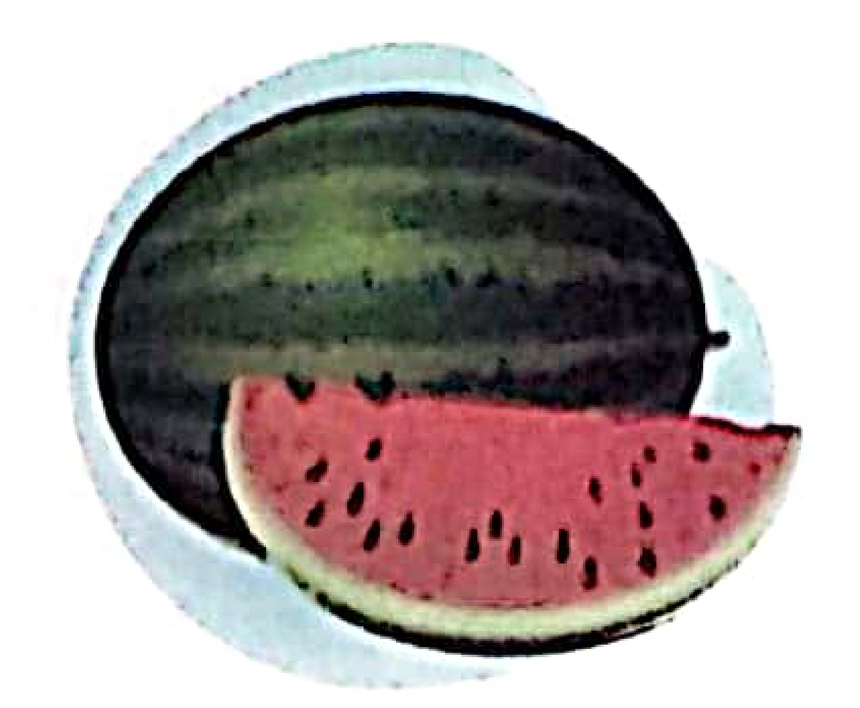
4. looks - The - delicious - food.

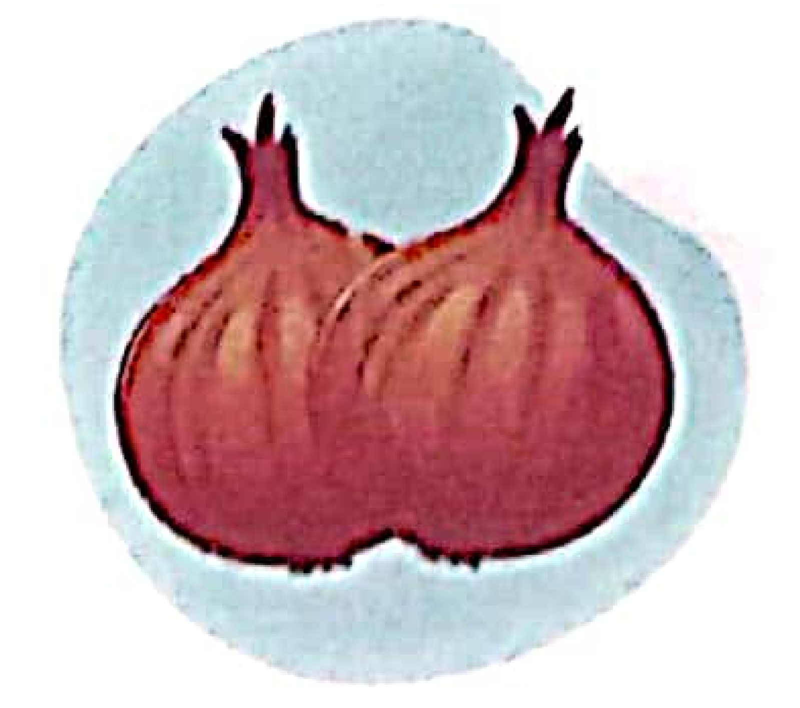
____

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

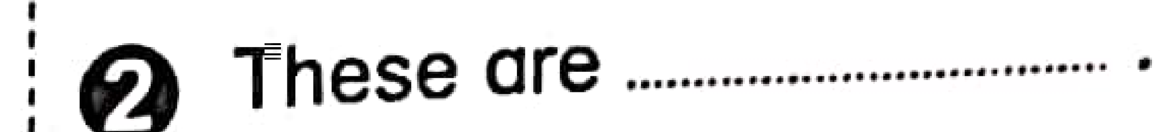
4 Complete the sentences:

أكمل الجمل:





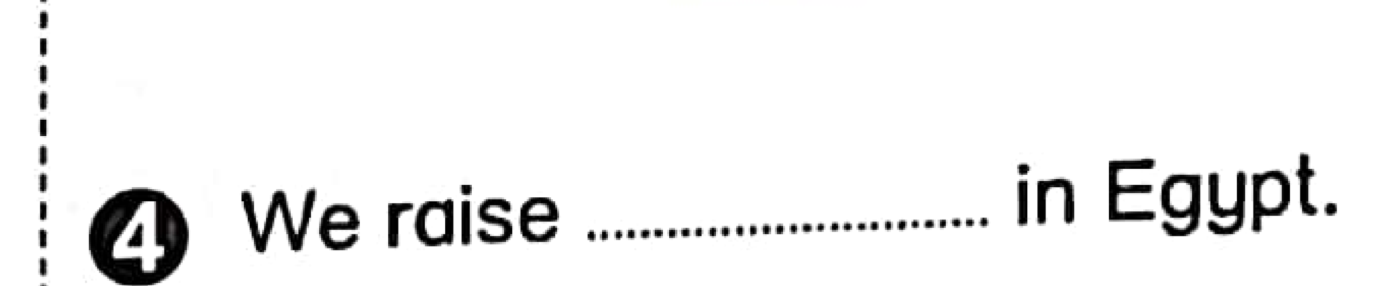
1. I want ....



2. These are ....



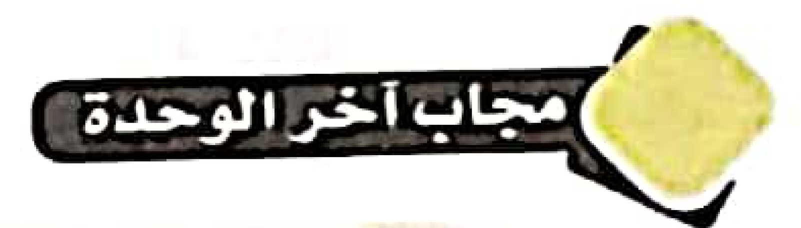
3. I like ....



4. We raise .... in Egypt.

5 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

أكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات التالية:



have lunch - vegetables - rice - chicken - bananas - grapes



- -

- -

- -

- -

- -



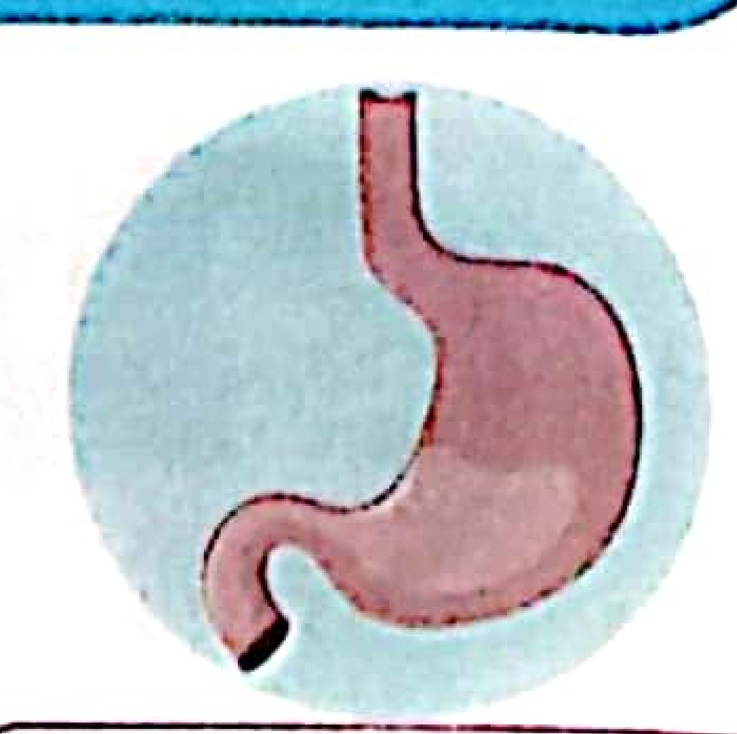
★ CLIL : Science



mouth فم



esophagus* مرئ

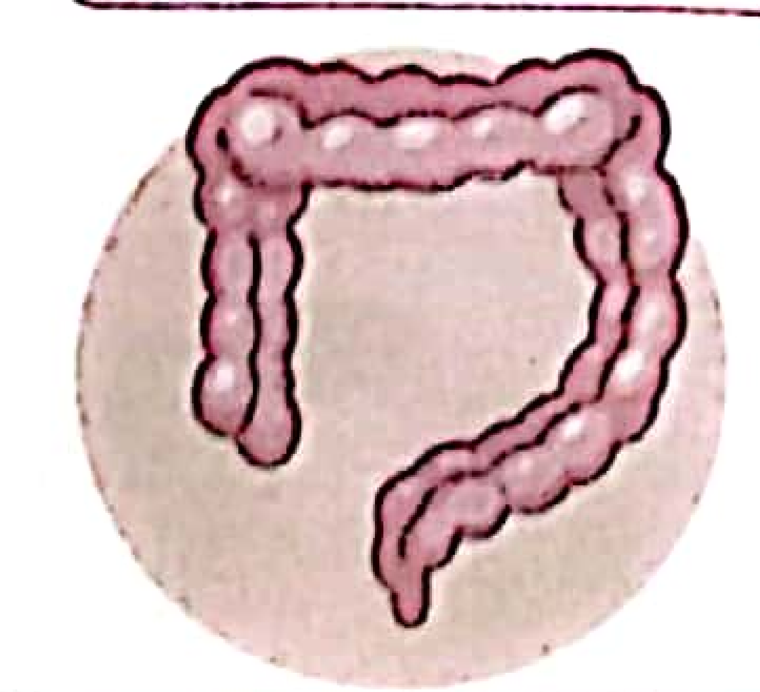


stomach معدة



gastric juice
العصارة الهضمية



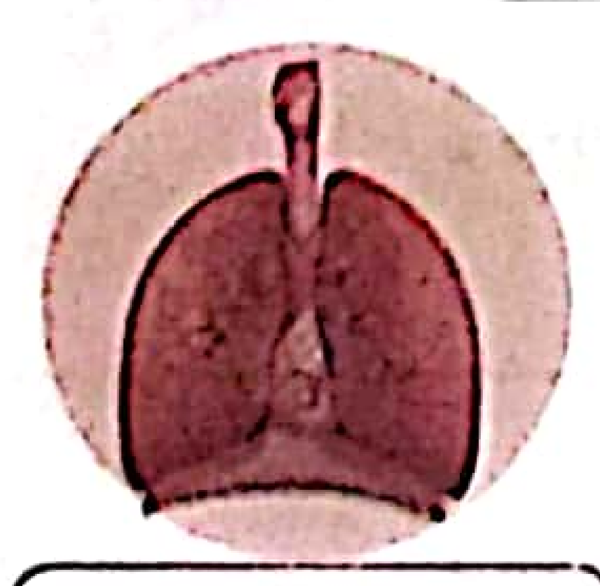


large intestine*
الامعاء الغليظة

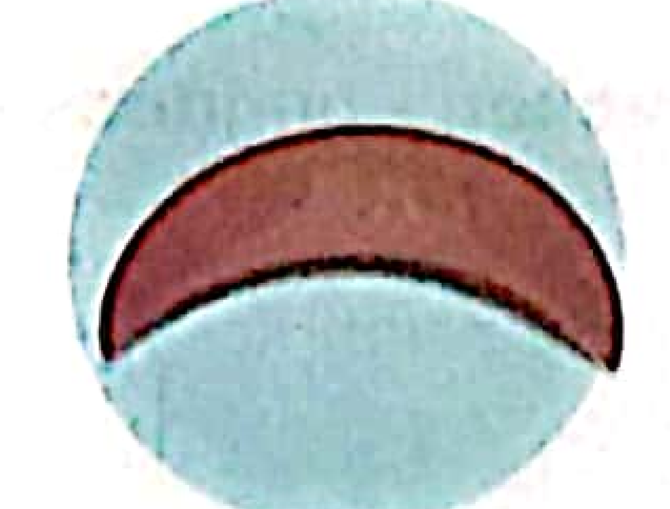


small intestine الامعاء الدقيقة

The respiratory system الجهاز التنفسي



lungs
الرئتان



diaphragm*
الحجاب الحاجز



breathe*in
يدخل الهواء (شهيق)



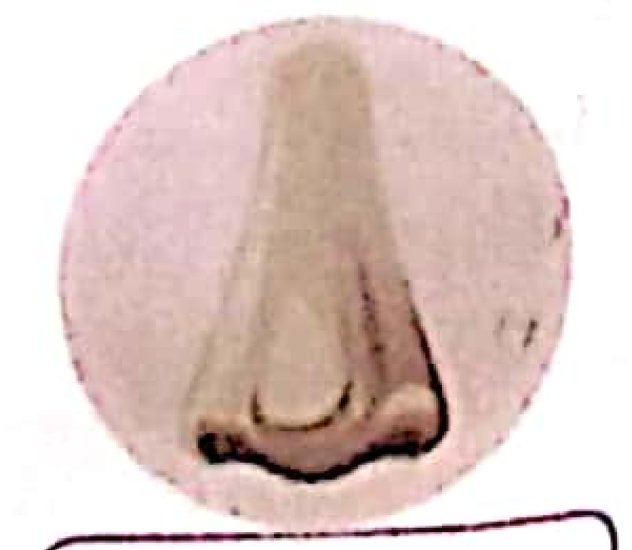
breathe out
يخرج الهواء (زفير)



carbon dioxide*
ثانى اكسيد الكربون



oxygen
اكسجين



nose
أنف

Help your child learn about the digestive and the respiratory systems.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الجهاز الهضمى والجهاز التنفسى.

A healthy respiratory system جهاز تنفسى صحى



stay away from smoke
ابعد عن الدخان



exercise
تدرب



put green plants in your balcony
ضع نباتات خضراء في بلكونتك



drink plenty of water
اشرب كميات كبيرة من الماء

Verbs افعال

remove	يتخلص من	mix	يخلط
digest	يهضم	pump	يضخ
chew*	يمضغ		

Other words كلمات آخرى

salt	ملح	blood*	دم
waste	فضلات	muscle	عضلة
energy	طاقة	nutrients	عناصر غذائية

Definitions تعريفات

pump	يضخ	To move quickly from one place to another.
nose	انف	This is the center of the face.
lungs	رئتان	We have two of these. They are inside the body.
diaphragm	الحجاب الحاجز	This is a muscle under the lungs.
breathe	يتنفس	To take in oxygen and give out carbon dioxide.

لاحظ، يتنفس (breathe) تشمل يشهق (breathe in) ويزفر (breathe out).

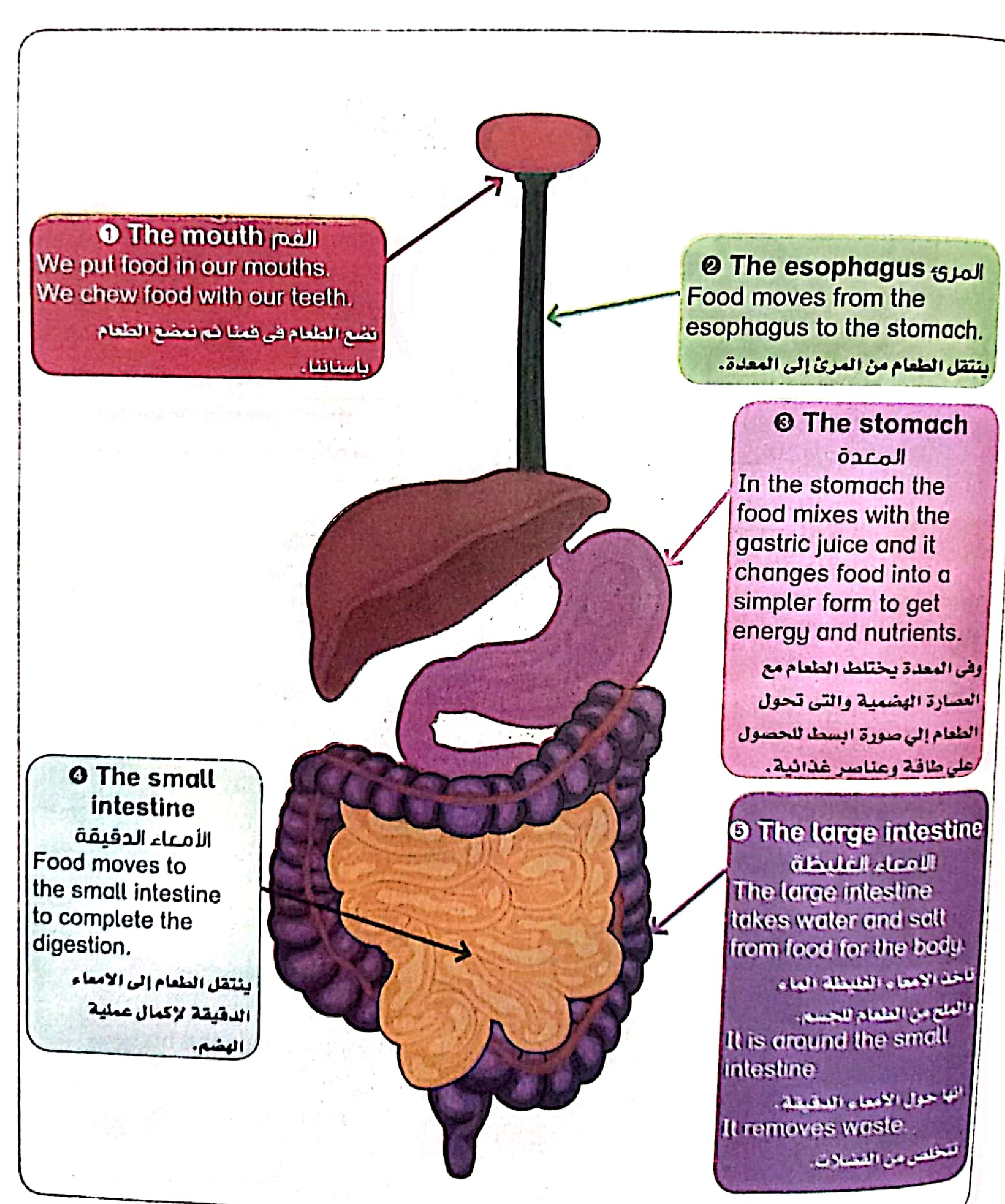
Help your child learn how to have a healthy respiratory system.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم كيف يتمتع بجهاز تنفسى صحى.

The Digestives System

الجهاز الهضمى

① انظر إلى الصورة الآتية وتتبع الخطوات لتتعلم خطوات عملية الهضم:



Help your child learn about the digestive system. ساعد طفلك لان يتعلم عن الجهاز الهضمى.



The Respiratory System

الجهاز التنفسى

انظر إلى الصورة الآتية وتتبع الخطوات لتتعلم خطوات عملية التنفس:

1- We breathe in air through our nose.
نتنفس الهواء من خلال الأنف.

Diaphragm

Lungs

2- Our diaphragm goes down and pulls air into lungs.
ينزل الحجاب الحاجز لاسفل ويسحب الهواء داخل الرئتان.

3- The oxygen goes into our blood.
يدخل الأكسجين فى الدم.

4- Our heart pumps blood around the body.
يضخ القلب الدم حول الجسم

5- The diaphragm pushes air with carbon dioxide out of our lungs.
يدفع الحجاب الحاجز ثانى اكسيد الكربون من الرئتين.

Unit 1 I feel good

① Work in pairs. Discuss this question:

يعمل الطلاب فى ثنائيات ويناقشوا السؤال التالي:



- What happens in our body when we eat food?

ماذا يحدث فى جسدنا عندما نأكل الطعام؟

- We put food in our............................

نضع الطعام فى ....

② Look, read, and label the body:

انظر واقرأ وضع الأسماء علي الجسم (اسفل الصفحة):

1. The esophagus goes from the mouth to the stomach.

يبدأ المرئ من الفم إلي المعدة.

2. When the food moves from the esophagus to the stomach, the gastric juice digests it.

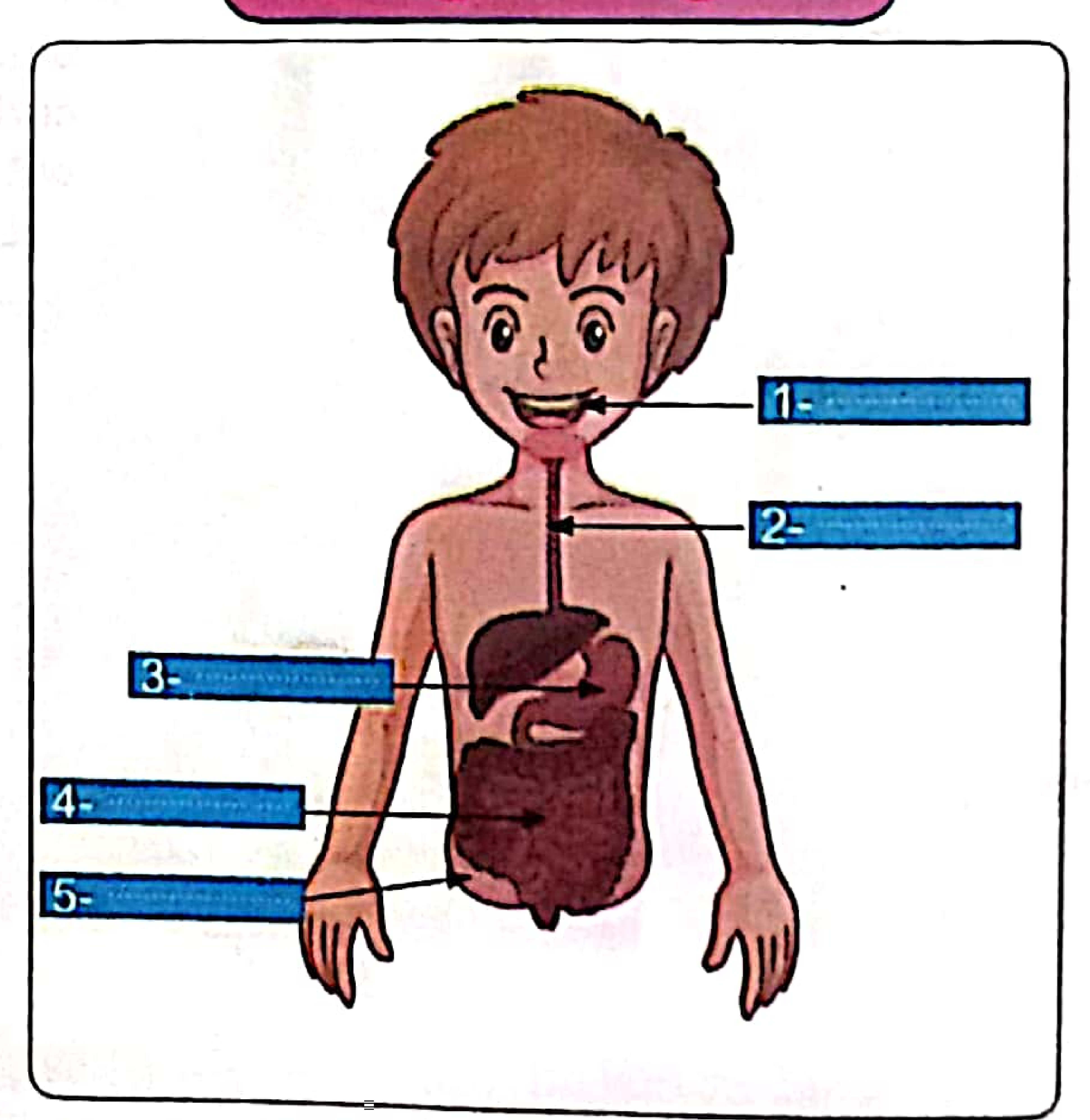
عندما ينتقل الطعام من المرئ إلي المعدة تهضم العصارة الهضمية الطعام.

3. Food moves from the stomach to the small intestine to complete the digestion. ينتقل الطعام من المعدة إلي الأمعاء الدقيقة لاكمال عملية الهضم.

4. The large Intestine is around the small intestine. It takes water and salt from food for the body. It removes waste.

الأمعاء الغليظة تكون حول الأمعاء الدقيقة. وتستخلص الماء والملح من الطعام الى الجسم. وتتخلص من الفضلات.





3 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

mixes - gastric juice - teeth - nutrients - eat

When we eat .....

We use our digestive system to digest what we 1 ....eat....

We put food in our mouths. We chew food with our 2 ....

Then the food goes down the esophagus. It arrives in the stomach. In the stomach, the food 3 ....with the gastric juice.

The 4 .... changes the food into a simpler form to get energy and 5 .... .We need the energy and nutrients in our body.

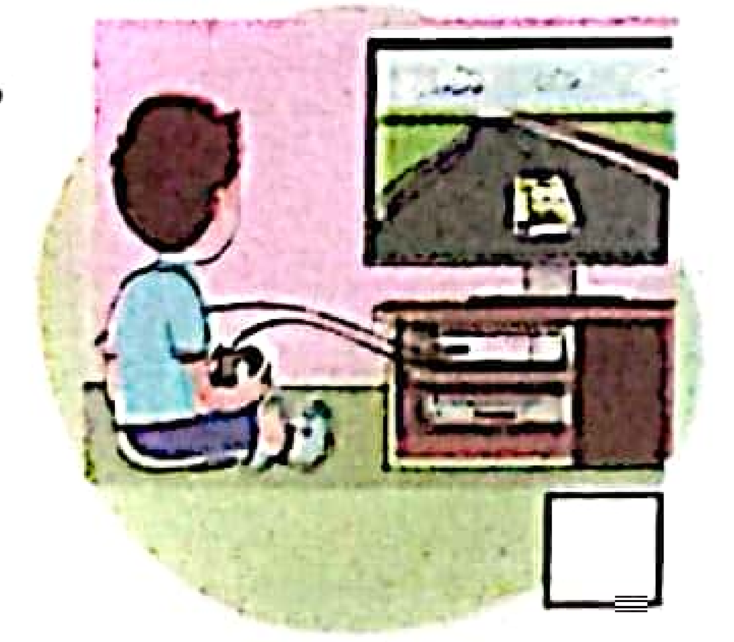


4 How can we have a healthy digestive system? Check the healthy things:

كيف يمكن أن تتمتع بجهاز هضمي صحى؟ ضع علامة ✓ على الأشياء الصحية:

لاحظ

إن ممارسة الرياضة (مثل المشى) والاكل الصحى وشرب الماء يساعد الجهاز الهضمى ولكن قلة التمارين والطعام غير الصحى كالآيس كريم يضر الجهاز الهضمى.

a.  ☐

b.  ☐

c.  ☐

d.  ☐

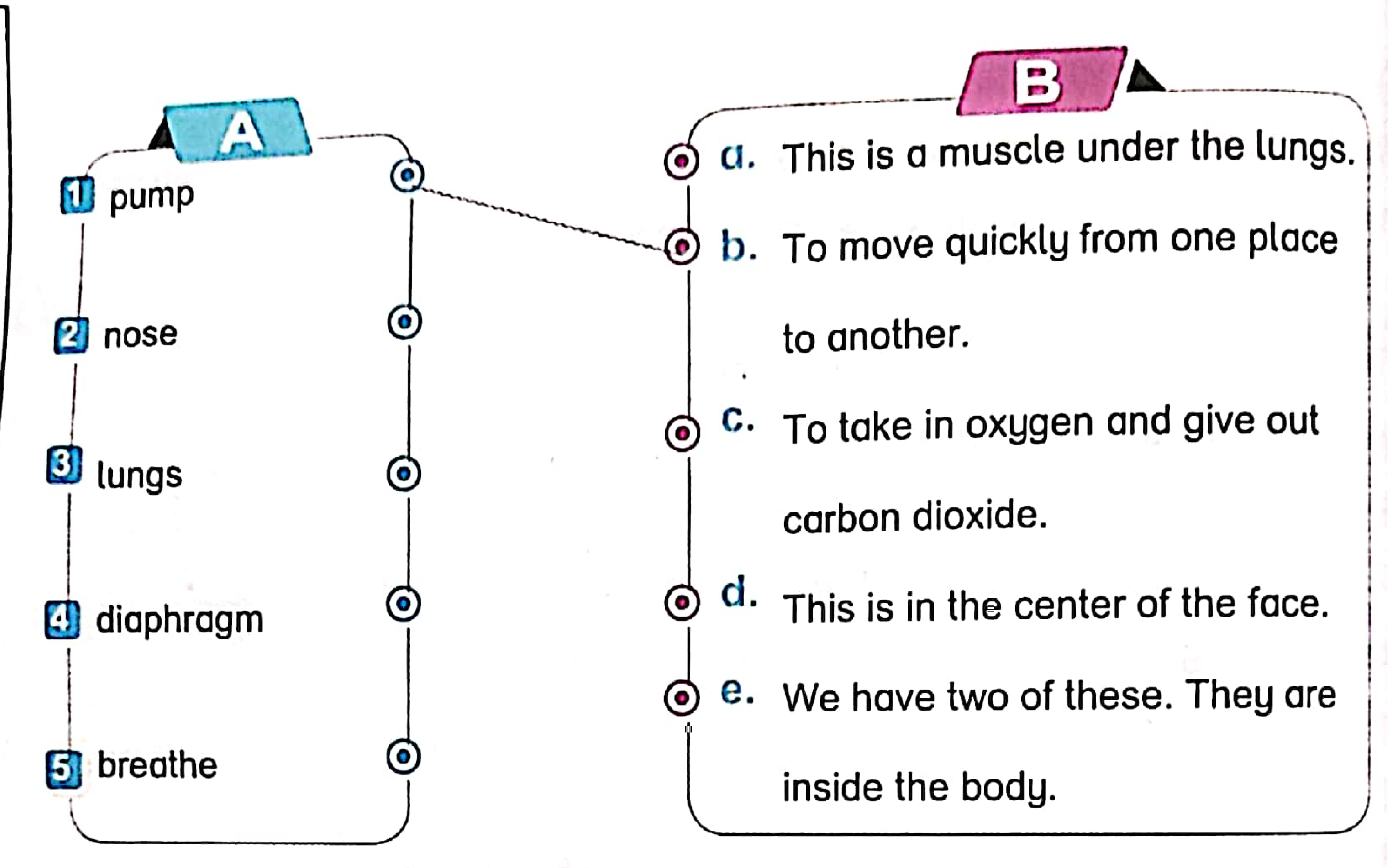
e.  ☐

Help your child learn how to have a healthy digestive system.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يتمتع بجهاز هضمى صحى.

5 Look and match the descriptions to the words: Listen and check

انظر وصل الوصف بالكلمات الصحيحة ، استمع وافحص ،

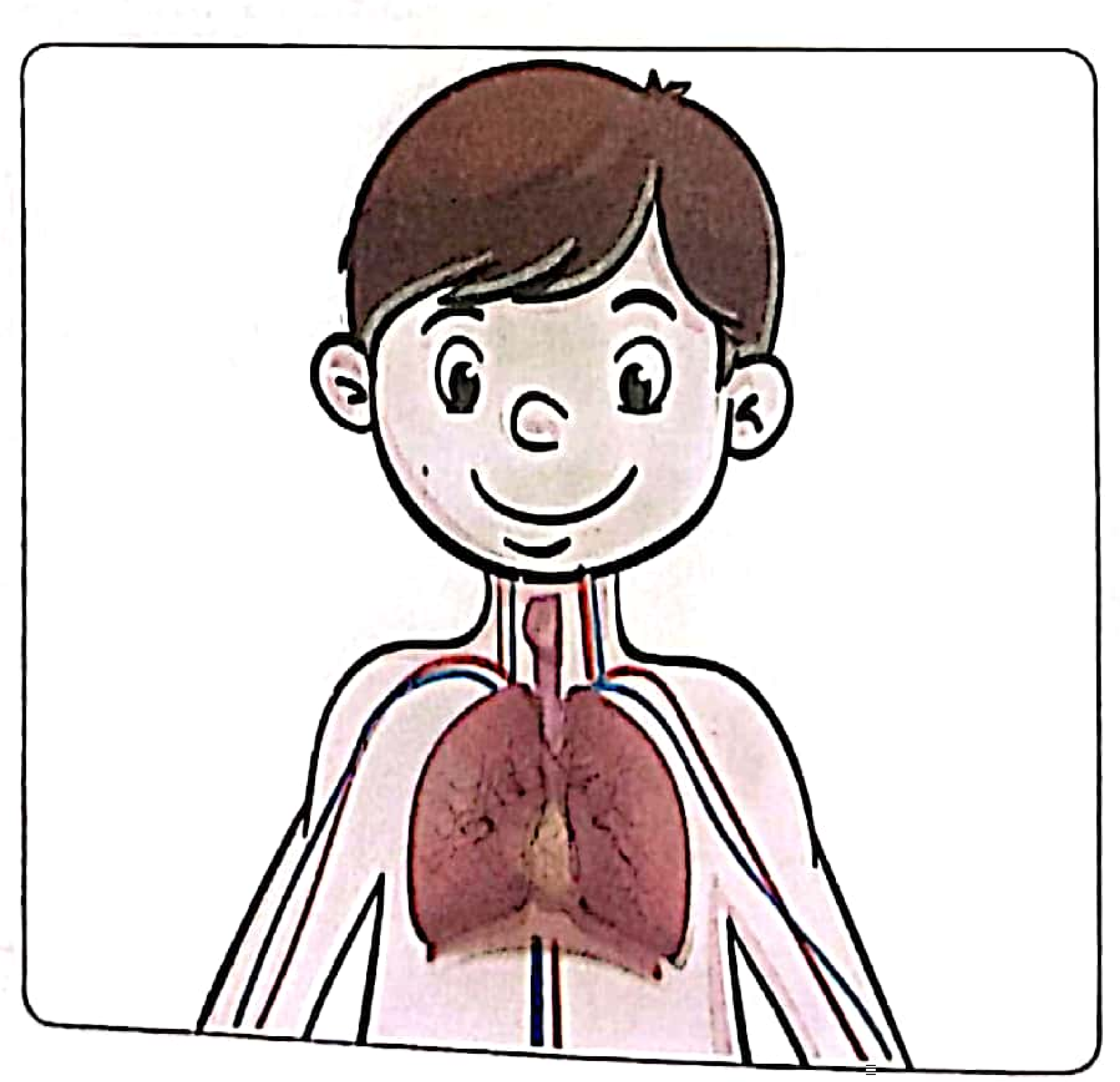


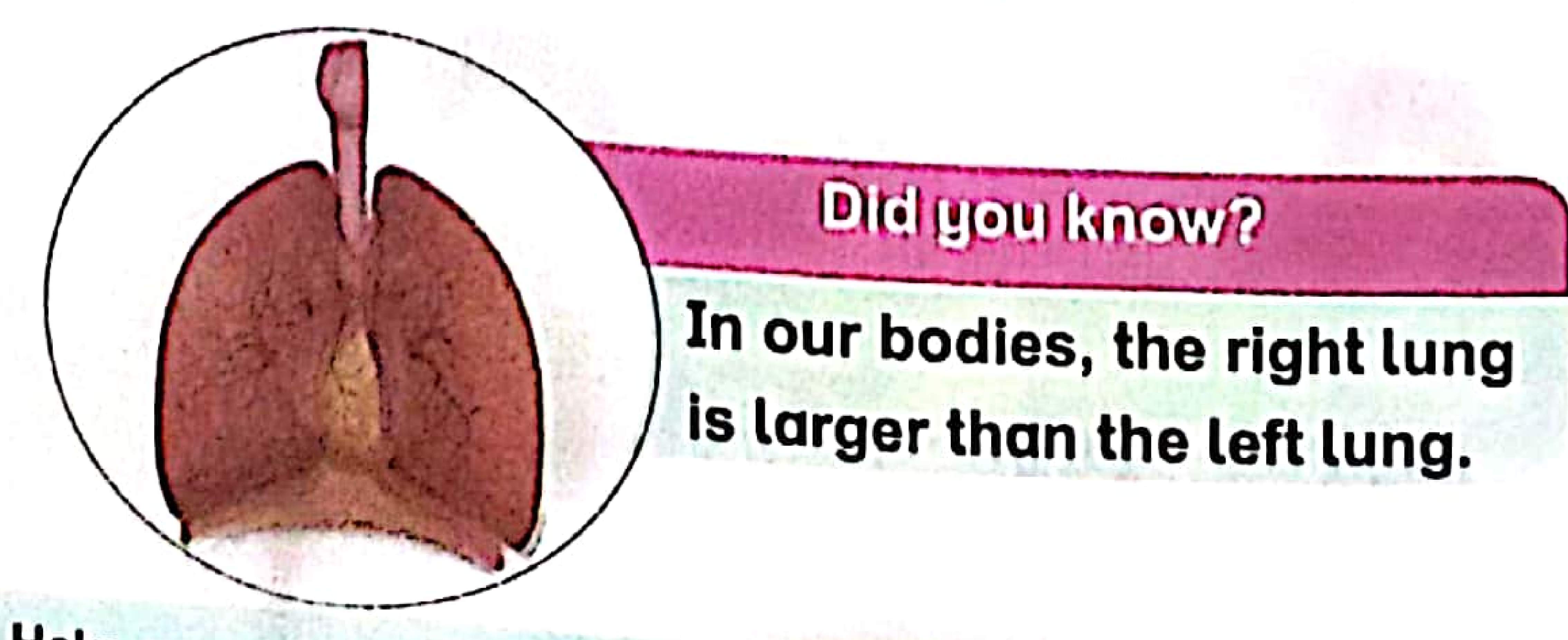
A

1. pump
2. nose
3. lungs
4. diaphragm
5. breathe

B

a. This is a muscle under the lungs.
b. To move quickly from one place to another.
c. To take in oxygen and give out carbon dioxide.
d. This is in the center of the face.
e. We have two of these. They are inside the body.





Did you know?

In our bodies, the right lung is larger than the left lung.

Help your child look and match. ساعد طفلك ان ينظر ويصل.



6 Read the text and put the sentences in the correct order:

اقرأ النص وضع الجمل فى الترتيب الصحيح:

Our respiratory system

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We need oxygen in our bodies.

We breathe in air through our nose. Our diaphragm goes down. It pulls air into our lungs.

In the lungs, the oxygen from the air goes into our blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body. The diaphragm goes up. It pushes air with carbon dioxide out of our lungs. We breathe out.

☐	The diaphragm pulls air into our lungs.
☐	The diaphragm moves up and pushes the air out of our body.
☐	The heart pumps the blood around our body.
1	We breathe through our nose.
☐	The diaphragm goes down.
☐	When the air arrives in our lungs, the oxygen goes into our blood.

7 How can we have a healthy respiratory system? Look and match:

كيف تتمتع بجهاز تنفسى صحى ؟ انظر وصل:

1. Stay away from smoke.
2. Exercise.
3. Put green plants in your balcony.
4. Drink plenty of water.

ⓐ ⓑ ⓒ ⓓ

Activities



1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A

1. Diaphragm
2. Stay away
3. Breathe
4. The large intestine

B

a. to take in oxygen and give out carbon dioxide.
b. removes waste.
c. This is a muscle under the lungs.
d. from smoke.
e. Carbon.

2 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We breathe through our ....
   a nose b eyes c teeth
2. The heart .... the blood around our body.
   a digests b pumps c mixes
3. The esophagus goes from the mouth to the ....
   a stomach b liver c lungs
4. We .... food with our teeth.
   a pump b breathe c chew
5. The diaphragm pushes air with .... out of our lungs.
   a carbon dioxide b oxygen c blood

3 Rearrange the following to make sentences: عد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. gastric juice - The - food - mixes - with - the.

----

2. the stomach - The esophagus - the mouth - to - goes from.

----

3. large intestine - around - is - The - small intestine - the.

----

4. around - Our heart - blood - pumps - our body.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى وأجب عن الاسئلة:

We use our digestive system to digest what we eat and drink. We put food in our mouths. We chew food with our teeth. Then the food goes down the esophagus. It arrives in the stomach. In the stomach, the food mixes with the gastric juice. The gastric juice changes the food into a simpler form to get energy and nutrients.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where do we put our food?

----

2. Does the food go down the esophagus?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
3	We chew food with our teeth.		
4	The food arrives in the lungs.		

5 Complete the sentences:

اكمل الجمل:

1 This is my ....

2 The large .... removes waste.

3 The .... take in oxygen and give out carbon dioxide.

4 Drink plenty of ....

Lesson 3

★ Health problems



play football
يلعب كرة القدم



play basketball
يلعب كرة السلة



drink water
يشرب مياه



exercise
يتمرن





eat vegetables
يأكل خضراوات



drink cola
يشرب كولا

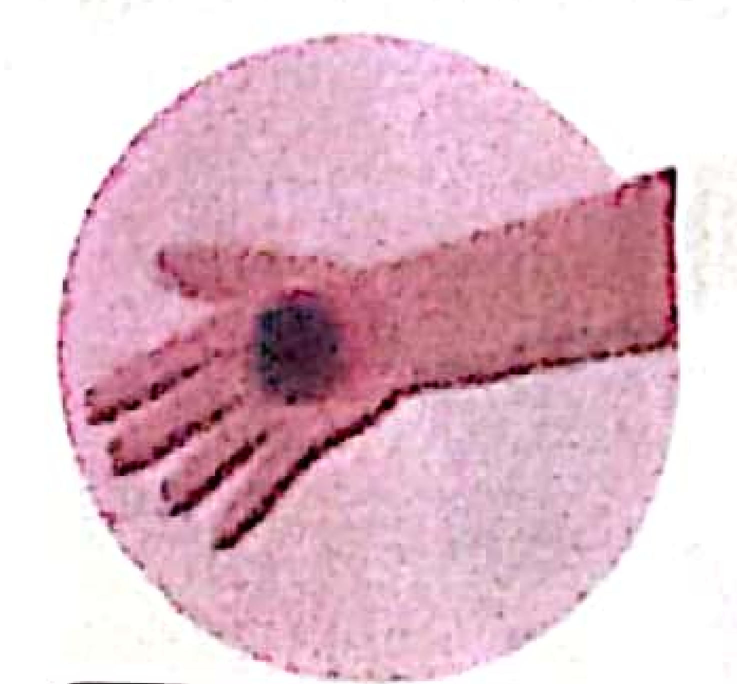


eat candy
يأكل حلوى





play video games
يلعب ألعاب الفيديو



burn
حرق

Health problems
مشكلات صحية



cough
يكح

Help your child learn about healthy and unhealthy things.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الأشياء الصحية وغير الصحية.



sprain
يصاب بالتواء



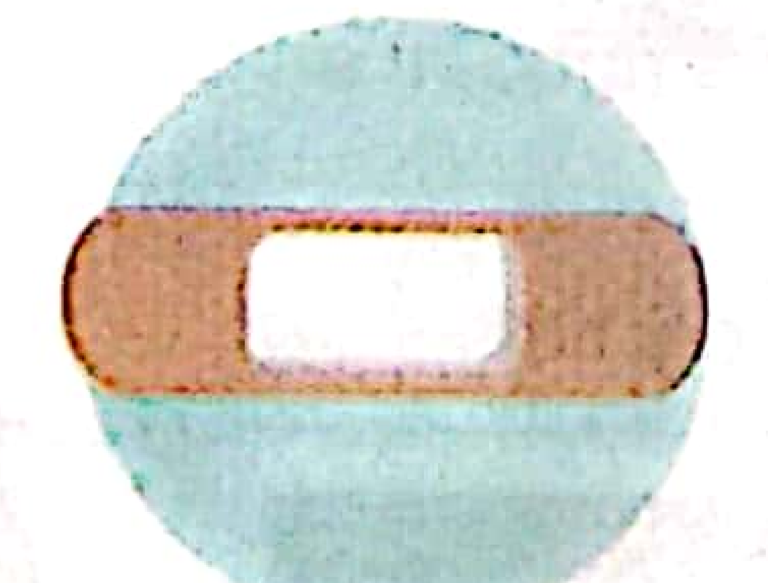
gloves*
قفازات



first-aid kit
أدوات الإسعافات الأولية



scrape*
خدش «خربوش»



band-aid*
لزقة جروح



nosebleed
نزيف من الأنف



pinch nose
يضغط على الأنف

Verbs افعال

hurt	يؤذى / يؤلم	put on	يرتدى / يضع
hold	يُثَبِت / يبقى فى وضع ما	hit	يضرب
twist	يلف	redo	يعيد عمل / يجدد
cut	يجرح	press	يضغط

Other words كلمات آخرى

scientist	عالم	back	ظَهر
burger	سندوتش برجر	joints	مفاصل

Definitions

sprain (v) : to twist one of the body joints
يصاب بالتواء

Grammar قواعد لغوية

① And و / But لكن

◉ نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة أى انها تضيف للمعنى.

- I play tennis and basketball.
- I like fruit and vegetables.

◉ و نستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين جملتين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية.

- I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.
- The desert is very interesting, but it is very hot.

② نتعلم أيضًا فى هذا الدرس الأفعال الصحية وغير الصحية

healthy ✓ صحى	unhealthy ✗ غير صحى
drink water ✓	drink cola ✗
eat fruit ✓	eat candy ✗
play football and tennis ✓	play video games ✗

③ نتعلم أيضا كيفية التعامل مع المشكلات الصحية.



1- You have a burn on your hand.

- لديك حرق فى يدك.

→ Hold the hand under cold water for 10 minutes.

- ثبت يدك تحت الماء البارد لمدة ١٠ دقائق.

2- Your cousin cannot breathe. She is coughing.

- ابنة عمك لا تستطيع ان تتنفس وتكح.

→ Hit her on the back with your hand open.

- اضربها على ظهرها براحة يدك.



3- Your brother sprained his foot.

- اصيب اخوك بالتواء فى قدمه.

→ Press a bag of ice on his foot.

- ضع كيس ثلج واضغط على قدمه.

Help your child learn how to deal with health problems.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يتعامل مع المشاكل الصحية.



4- Someone falls over and cuts their leg.

- يسقط شخص ويجرح قدمه.

→ Wash the scrape with water and soap.

- اغسل الخدش بماء وصابون.

→ Put on a band-aid. - ضع لزقة جروح.

5- Someone has a nosebleed. - اصيب شخص بنزيف من الانف.

→ Pinch their nose. - اضغط على انفه.

→ Ask them to breathe through their mouth.

- اطلب منه أن يتنفس من فمه.

1 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions:

يعمل الطلاب فى ثنائيات ويناقشوا الأسئلة الآتية.

1. Do you think you are healthy? ------------------------------------

2. What healthy things do you do? ------------------------------------

2 Listen to Adam, Dareen, and Judy talking about being healthy. Label the photos:

استمع الى (آدم وادارين وجودى) حيث يتكلموا حول أن تكون بصحة جيدة. وضع الاسم تحت الصورة.

Tapescript  نص الاستماع

Adam : I play basketball and I play football in the park.

Dareen : I love burgers, but I only eat one a week. I never drink cola but I want to drink more water.

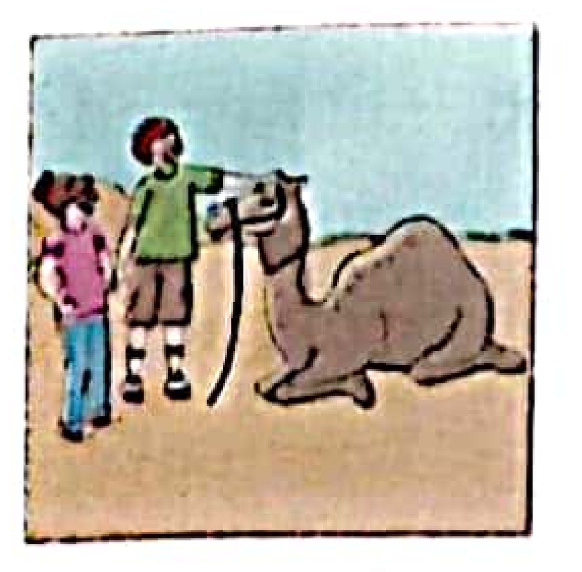
Judy : I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. Dad is a scientist and he likes looking at animals and plants. The desert is a very interesting place but it's very hot sometimes.

1 

....

2 

....

3 

....

Help your child listen and answer the questions. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

3 Listen again and answer the questions: استمع مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة.

1. Who never drinks cola? ____________
2. Who plays football? ____________
3. Who doesn't eat candy? ____________

4 Listen again and complete the sentences with (and) or (but):

استمع مرة أخرى وأكمل الجمل باستخدام (و) أو (لكن).

1. I don't eat candy, ____________ I like fruit.
2. I drink cola, ____________ I want to drink more water.
3. I play basketball ____________ I play football in the park.
4. Dad is a scientist ____________ he likes looking at animals and plants.
5. It's a very interesting place, ____________ it's very hot sometimes!
6. I love burgers, ____________ I only eat one a week.

5 Write sentences with (and) or (but) about how you are being healthy:

أكتب جمل باستخدام (و) أو (لكن) حول أن تكون بصحة جيدة.

1. I practice basketball on Wednesday and I walk home from school every day.
2. ____________

1. I love playing video games, but I only play them on Saturday.
2. ____________

6 Read the health problems. Circle the correct answer a or b:

اقرأ المشاكل الصحية. وضع دائرة حول a أو b.

1. Your friend has a burn on his/ her hand.
   a. Hold the hand under cold water for 10 minutes.
   b. Put butter on the burn.



2. Your cousin cannot breathe. She is coughing.
   a. Hit her on the arm.
   b. Hit her on the back with your hand open.



3. Your brother sprained his foot.
   a. Ask him to jump.
   b. Press a bag of ice on his foot.



Help your child read the health problems and answer the questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ المشاكل الصحية ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

7 Read and put the instructions in the correct order. How we can help:

اقرأ وضع التعليمات فى الترتيب الصحيح. كيف يمكن أن نساعد:

[ ] Ask them to sit down.

[1] Someone falls over and cuts their(1) leg. Be a kind friend.

[ ] The next day, wash the scrape with soap and water again. Redo the band-aid.

[ ] Put on gloves.

[ ] Wash the scrape with water and soap.

[ ] Put on a band-aid.

8 Look and complete the instructions to help someone with a nosebleed:

انظر وأكمل التعليمات لتساعد شخص مصاب بنزيف من الأنف:

1. Someone has a nosebleed. Be a kind friend.
2. Ask them to stay calm.
3. Don't let them lie down.
4. Hold their --

5. Ask them to -------------------------------- through their mouth.
6. Continue pinching the nose for 5 - 10 minutes.

Find out

What is usually in a first-aid kit?

ماذا يوجد فى صندوق الإسعافات الأولية؟

band-aids / gloves / thermometer

لاحظ

1- عند الاشارة لكلمة (someone) فى الجملة نستخدم الضمير (their) لاننا لا نعرف إذا كان الشخص ذكر أو انثى.

Activities



1 Complete the sentences: أكمل الجمل:



1. Wash the .... with soap.



2. She is ....



3. He .... his foot.



4. He has a ....

2 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I don't eat candy .... I like fruit.
   a and　　b to　　c but
2. I like chocolate .... ice cream.
   a but　　b and　　c so
3. I eat vegetables .... I exercise.
   a but　　b and　　c to
4. I practice basketball .... football.
   a and　　b because　　c but
5. I want to play football .... I hurt my leg.
   a but　　b and　　c to
6. My dad is Egyptian, ... his dad is French.
   a and　　b so　　c but
7. Waleed speaks English, ... he can't speak Chinese.
   a but　　b to　　c and
8. We wash a scrape .... stick a band-aid.
   a because　　b and　　c but



3 Read and complete with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل:

burn - healthy - sprain - band-aid - scrape

1. Do you think you are ....?
2. If you have a .... hold the hand under cold water.
3. Put on a .... on the cut.
4. Press a bag of ice on your foot if you .... it.
5. Wash the ....with soap and water.

4 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A

1. I drink water,
2. I practice
3. He sprained
4. I have a band-aid

B

a. basketball.
b. in the first-aid kit.
c. sit down.
d. but I don't drink cola.
e. his foot.

5 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. don't - I - candy - eat.

- -

2. in - football - the park - I - play.

- -

3. eat - and - I - vegetables - exercise.

- -

4. water - Hold - cold - under - the hand.

- -



★ A short story- Pronunciation and Math



oats* شوفان



flapjacks
بسكويت الشوفان



apartment
شقة

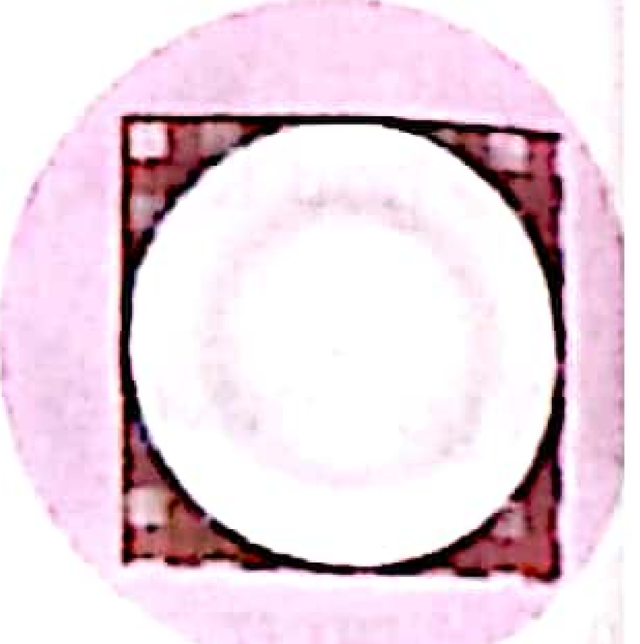
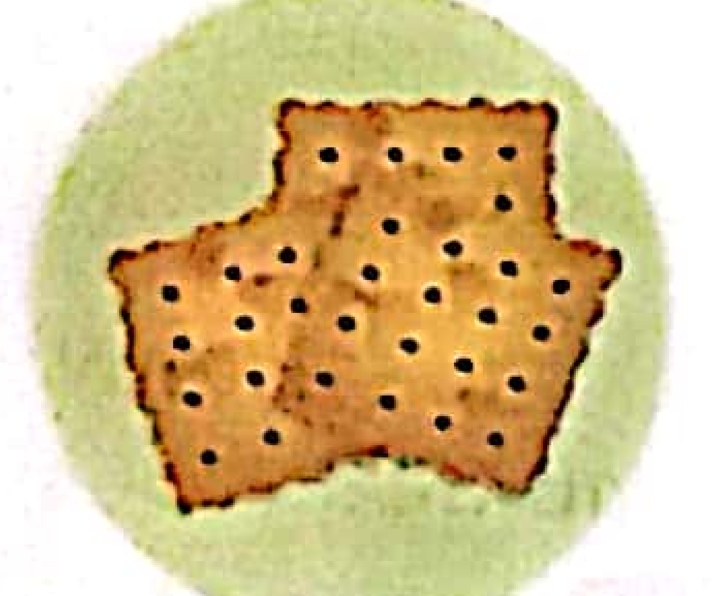


plate بق



square cookies
بسكويت مُحلى مربع الشكل



butter
زبد



honey
عسل



sugar سكر



pan طاسة

salt ملح

Verbs افعال

melt	يُذيب	slice	يقطع إلى شرائح
stir	يُقلب	taste good	يكون له مذاق جيد
bake	يخبز		

Other words كلمات أخرى

Egyptian	مصرى	recipe	وصفة طعام
British	بريطانى	one day	ذات يوم
parents	الوالدان	a bit worried	قلق قليلا
try a little	جرب القليل	a great idea	فكرة رائعة
excited	متحمس	low heat	حرارة منخفضة
dessert	طعام التحلية	next time	المرة القادمة
ingredients	مقادير الطعام		

Help your child learn new words.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

① نستخدم too بمعنى أيضا آخر الجملة المثبتة للربط بين جملتين

- We are friends and our teachers are friends too.

② لتدعو شخص لتناول طعام:

- Would you like.........? / - Try a little.
- Would you like a flapjack?
- No, thanks.
- Try a little.



1 Read and listen. What is a flapjack?

اقرأ واستمع. ما هو بسكويت الشوفان؟

Talia learns to love flapjacks!

Talia and Suzanne are good friends. Talia is Egyptian and Suzanne is British. Their parents are friends too. They talk together a lot. They are sad when they say goodbye. One day, Talia and her mom go to Suzanne's apartment. Talia is excited, but she is a bit worried. What is British food? Does it taste good?

Suzanne says, "Please have some tea, Talia. Would you like a flapjack? My mom and I made them."

Suzanne has a plate in her hands. On the plate there are big, square cookies. Talia looks at the flapjacks.

"Suzanne, I am very happy you made them for me, but what is a flapjack?" she asks.

Suzanne says, "They are cookies. I make them with oats, butter, and honey. Try a little."

Talia's mom smiles too. Talia tries a flapjack. It's delicious! "I love it!" she says. "How do you make them?"

Suzanne says, "It's very easy. Next time you visit us, we can make them together!"

Talia says, "What a great idea!"

2 Work with a partner. Ask and answer:

يعمل الطلاب فى ثنائيات ويسألوا ويجيبوا.

1. Who are Talia and Suzanne? ------------------------------------
2. Where are they? ------------------------------------

Help your child read a short story about flapjacks. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة قصيرة عن بسكويت الشوفان.

3 Read again and answer T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ القطعة مرة أخرى واجب بـ (بصح) أم (خطأ).

	True	False
1. Suzanne goes to Talia's apartment.		
2. Suzanne is from Egypt.		
3. Talia loves flapjacks.		
4. Talia wants to make flapjacks.		
5. You need apples to make flapjacks.		

4 Read Suzanne's recipe for flapjacks. What is your favorite Egyptian dessert? Find out what the ingredients are and how you can make it.

اقرأ وصفة سوزان لعمل بسكويت الشوفان. ماهو طعام التحلية المصرى المفضل لك؟ تعرف على المقادير وكيفية عمله.

This is how Suzanne and her mom make flapjacks:

- خطوات عمل سوزان ووالدتها لبسكويت الشوفان.

- Melt the butter, sugar, and honey in a large pan over low heat.
- Add oats and salt and then stir well.
- Bake for 20 minutes.
- When the flapjacks are cold, slice into small squares.

Ingredients
220g butter
150g brown sugar
150g honey
440g oats
10g salt

Help your child know how to make flapjacks. ساعد طفلك ان يعرف كيف يعمل بسكويت الشوفان.

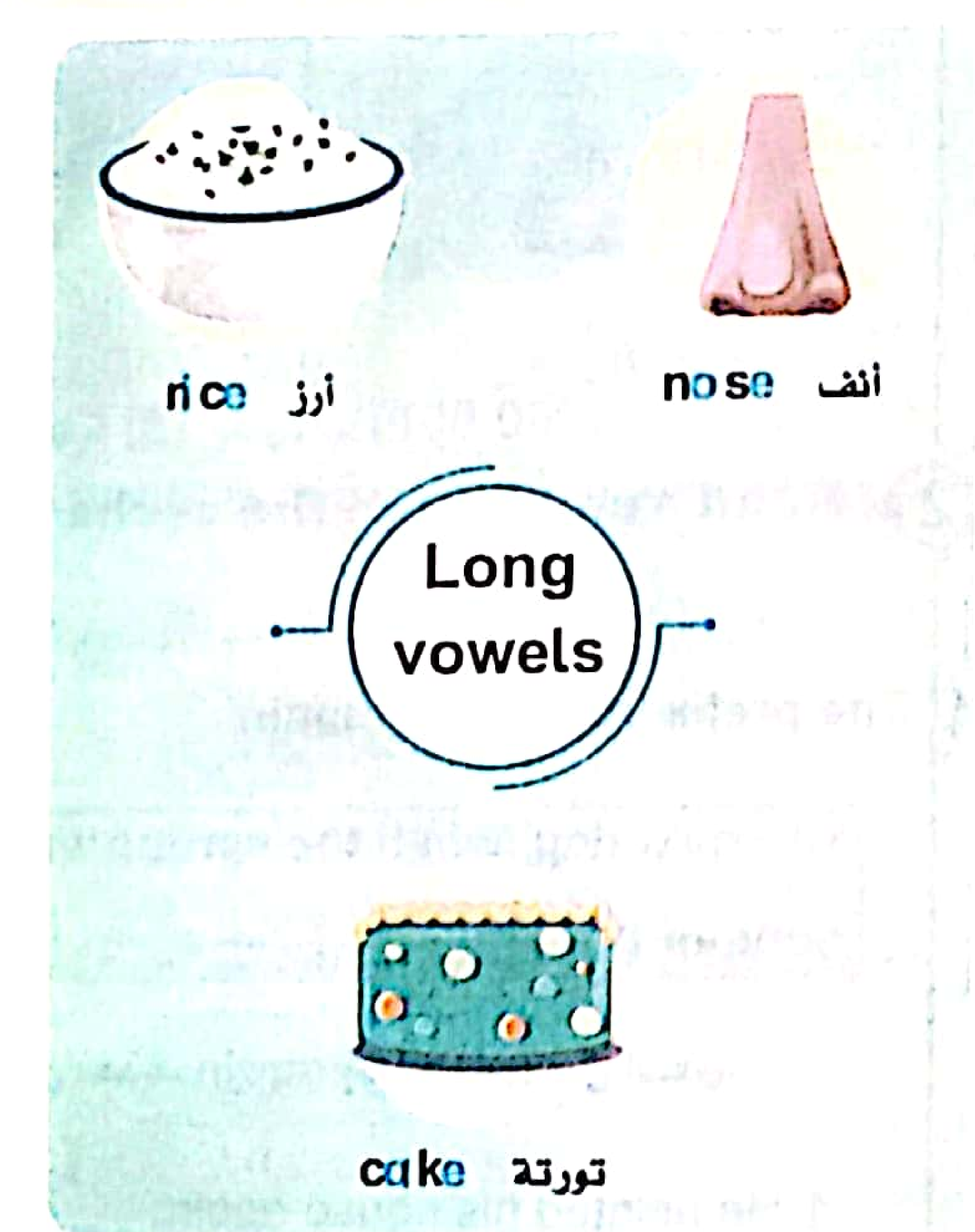




Pronunciation

- ندرس في هذا الدرس الاصوات المتحركة القصيرة والممتدة.
- الاصوات القصيرة غالبا تحتوى على حرف متحرك واحد (bag / pen / mix / mom / bus)
- الاصوات الممتدة تحتوى على صوتين متحركين (cake / feet / rice / nose / blue)





اصوات قصيرة	اصوات ممتدة
bag	cake
mom	nose
mix	rice

- ندرس ايضاً البادئة (re) التي تأتى أول الفعل بمعنى يعيد عمل.

البادئة (re) تعنى مرة اخرى prefix (re) means again

redo	يعيد فعل/يجدد	repaint	يعيد دهان
reclean	يعيد تنظيف	remake	يعيد عمل

Unit 1 I feel good

1 Look at the pictures and complete the words:

انظر إلى الصور واكمل الكلمات:



2 Read and change the verbs with "re":

اقرأ وغير الافعال باستخدام (re).

The prefix 're' means 'again'.

The next day, wash the scrape with soap and water again. Redo the band-aid.

لاحظ (again) تعنى مرة آخرى ولاعادة كتابة الجمل نحذف again ونضع (re) قبل الفعل.

1. He painted his house again. He repainted his house .
2. She cleaned her bike again. She recleaned her bike .
3. He made flapjacks again.

 ----

4. She did her homework again.





Comparing large digits / Ascending order

مقارنة الأعداد الكبيرة / الترتيب التصاعدي

➤ نتعلم أولاً العلامات الرياضية حيث : (=) تعنى يساوى/ (<) تعنى أصغر من/ (>) تعنى أكبر من.

- ندرس فى هذا الدرس مقارنة الاعداد الكبيرة كمايلى:

١ . بشكل عام العدد الذى به ارقام أكثر هو العدد الاكبر.

100.000	53.978

نلاحظ هنا أن العدد (100.000) يتكون من (6) أرقام والعدد (53.978) يتكون من (5) أرقام إذا العدد الأكبر هو (100.000).

٢ . إذا تساوى العددين نقارن أول رقم بالعدد الأول مع أول رقم بالعدد الآخر (مقارنة الرقم يكون من اليسار إلى اليمن).

512.345	612.345

هنا تساوى العددين فى عدد الأرقام. نبدأ المقارنة من أول رقم ونلاحظ أن 6 > 5 إذا 612.345 هو العدد الأكبر.

835.597	835.497

– عند مقارنة العددين نلاحظ تساوى أول ثلاثة أرقام (835) لكن 4 > 5 إذا العدد 835.597 هو الأكبر.

Ascending order الترتيب التصاعدى

هو ترتيب الاعداد من الصغير إلى الكبير كما تعلمنا فى الفقرة السابقة نحدد من هو العدد الصغير والكبير ثم نرتب من أصغر عدد إلى أكبر عدد قارن الآتى:

87.909 - 87.092 - 87.990

87.092 < 87.909 < 87.990

Help your child learn about comparing large digits and ascending order.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن مقارنة الاعداد الكبيرة والترتيب التصاعدى.

1 Look and say:

انظر وقل:

544.432	five hundred, forty-four thousand, and four hundred thirty-two
178,880	one hundred, seventy-eight thousand and eight hundred and eighty

2 Put the correct sign (>,< , or =):

ضع العلامة الصحيحة (< ، > أو =):

1. 655,534 [<] 698,881
2. 10,000,000 [ ] ten million
3. 100,000,000 [ ] 99,999,999

3 Arrange these numbers in ascending order:

رتب الأرقام ترتيب تصاعدى:

1. 87,909 - 87,092 - 87,990

----

2. 233,346 - 10,009 - 20,665 ---------------------------------

3. 20,000 – 20,310 – 19,311 ---------------------------------

Find out

The numerical digits we use today 1, 2 and 3 are based on the Hindu-Arabic numeral system. This system was developed over 1000 years ago. Can you find the smallest five-digit number?

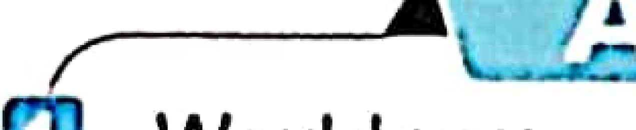
إن الاعداد التى نستخدمها حاليا (3, 2 , 1) مأخوذة من نظام العد الهندى العربى. تطور هذا النظام عبر ١٠٠٠ عام مضت. هل تستطيع معرفة اصغر عدد يتكون من خمسة ارقام؟ ......

Activities



1 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:



A

1. Would you
2. There are cookies
3. Talia is Egyptian
4. What a

B

a. and Suzanne is British.
b. like a flapjack?
c. on the plate.
d. great idea!
e. delicious.



2 Complete the sentences:

أكمل الجمل:



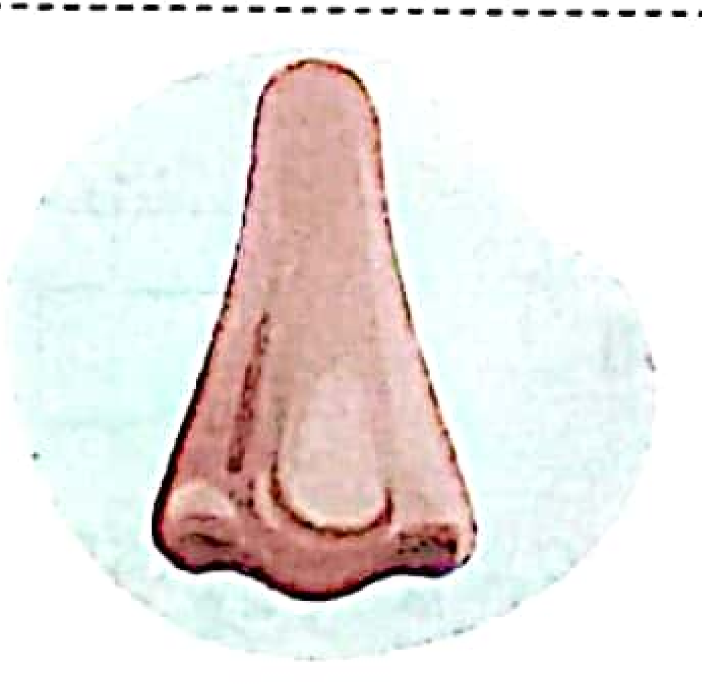
1. I like ....



2. This is my ....



3. I love my ....



4. We breathe with our ....

3 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Eman and Mary are good friends. Eman is Egyptian and Mary is British. One day Eman goes to Mary's house. Mary has a plate on her hands. On the plate there are big, square cookies. Eman looks at the flapjacks. She tries a flapjack. It's delicious.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Who is from British?

- -

2. Are Eman and Mary good friends?

- -

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
(3) Eman likes the flapjack.		
(4) Eman goes to Mary's apartment.		

4 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. you - Would - like - a flapjack? ....
2. Egypt - from - are - They. ....
3. repainted - He - house - his. ....
4. homework - She - her - redid. ....

5 Put the correct sign (>,< , or =):

ضع العلامة الصحيحة (< ، > أو =) (كما بالمثال):

1	111280	<	112800
2	366438		366843
3	672809		672809
5	702593		702359
6	23458		234582

6 Circle the short vowel and underline the long vowel:

ضع دائرة حول الصوت المتحرك القصير وخط تحت الصوت المتحرك الممتد (كما بالمثال):

(bag)	<u>rice</u>	cake	mom	bed
blue	bus	nose	mix	feet

7 Arrange the following numbers in ascending order:

رتب الأعداد الآتية تصاعديا (كما بالمثال):

1. 402,052 - 425,674 - 414,035 402,052 - 414,035 - 425,674
2. 643,947 - 643,757 - 642,066 ....
3. 113,636 - 372,257 - 337,633 ....
4. 563,426 - 564,376 - 653,363 ....

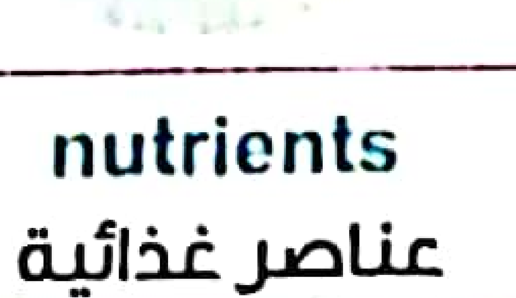


★ Social studies



Damietta governorate
محافظة دمياط





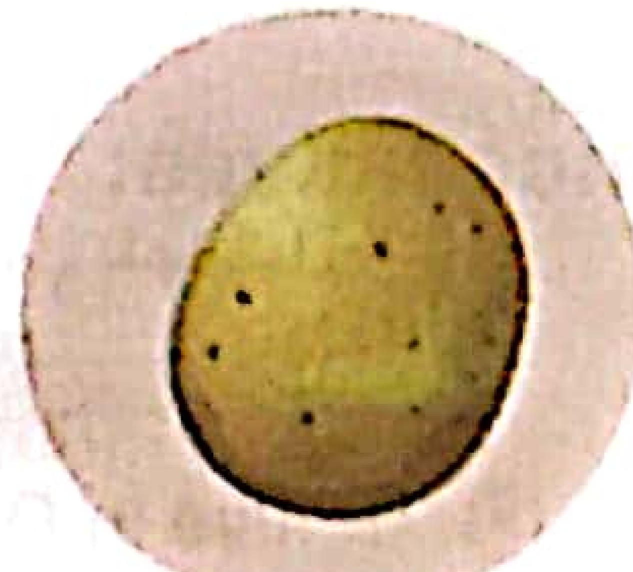
nutrients
عناصر غذائية



wheat قمح

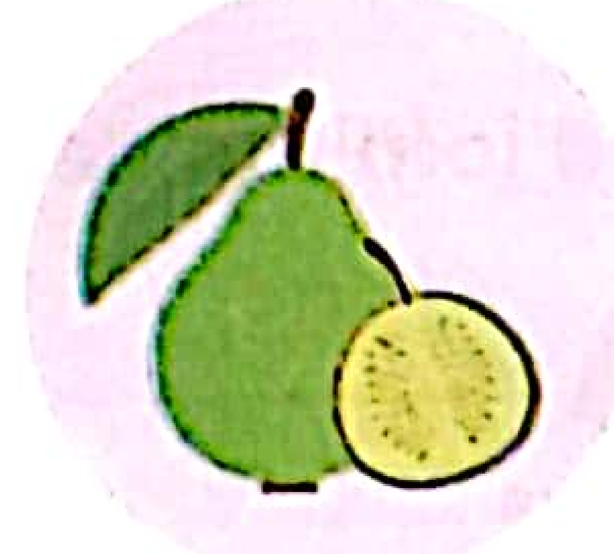


rice ارز



potato ثمرة بطاطس





guava ثمرة جوافة

tomato ثمرة طماطم



grapes عنب





lemons ليمون



fisherman صياد



sheep خروف



cow بقرة



goat معزة

1,000

thousand الف

1,000,000

million مليون

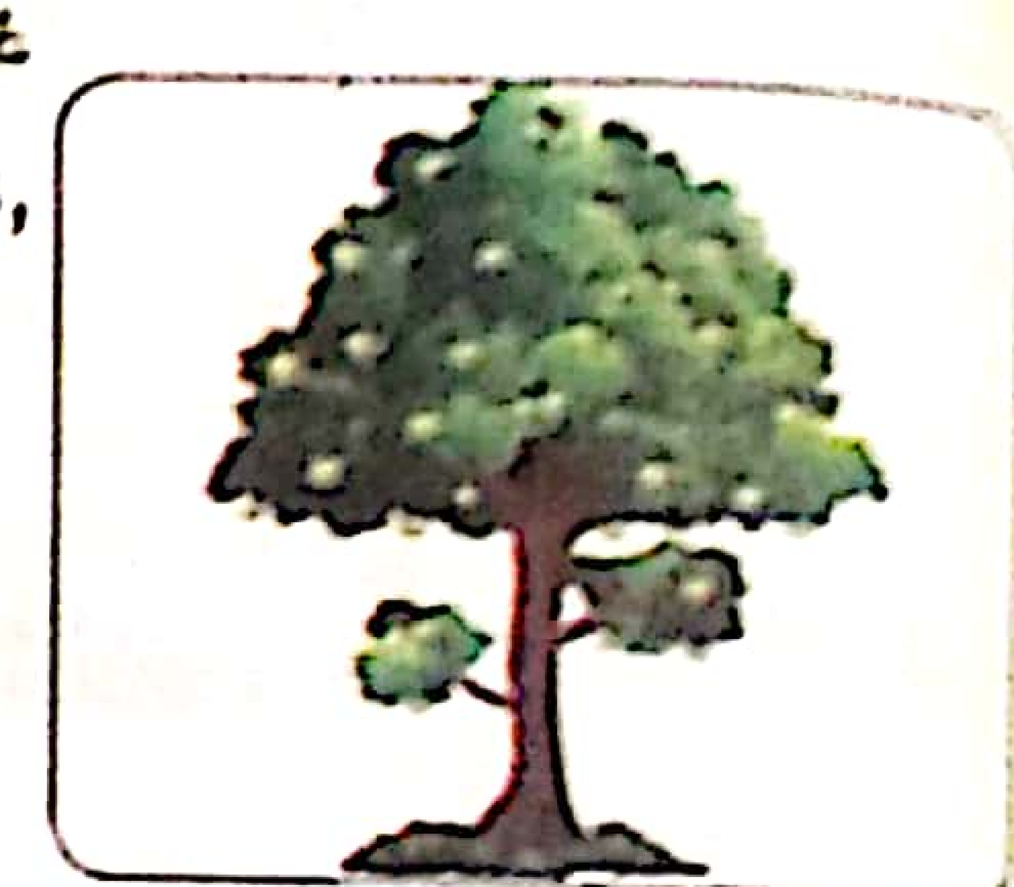


Domiati cheese جبنة دمياطى

Help your child learn about Damietta governorate. ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن محافظة دمياط

Food from Damietta governorate

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in غنى بـ nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats and sheep live in Damietta governorate too. Domiati cheese is very famous. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!



1 Read the text and join the sentence halves:

اقرأ النص واربط انصاف الجمل بنهايتها :

A

1. Damietta is famous
2. The animals you see
3. The farmers grow
4. About 1.5 million Egyptians

B

a. live in Damietta governorate.
b. tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, and guavas.
c. for Domiati cheese.
d. in Damietta are goats, cows and sheep.

2 Work in groups . Choose another governorate:

يعمل الطلاب فى ثنائيات ويختار الطلاب محافظة آخرى :

1. Write down everything you know about the place.
2. Think what information you need.
   - Where is it?
   - What do farmers produce there?
   - What is it famous for?
   - Who lives there?

3 Do some research and write what you learned:

لم يعمل بحث واكتب ماذا تعلمت :

K What I Know	W What I Want to Know	L What I Learned
Farmers in Minya grow sugarcane.		

Activities



1 Read and complete: اقرأ وأكمل:

fish - wheat - cheese- good- animals

1. Damietta is famous for Domiati ....
2. The farmers grow ....
3. Fishermen catch thousands of ....
4. Life is .... in Damietta.
5. Cows, goats and sheep are ....

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Damietta cheese is very	a. sugarcane.
2 Farmers in Minya grow	b. animals.
3 Cows are	c. people live in Damietta.
4 One and a half million	d. famous.
	e. Egypt.

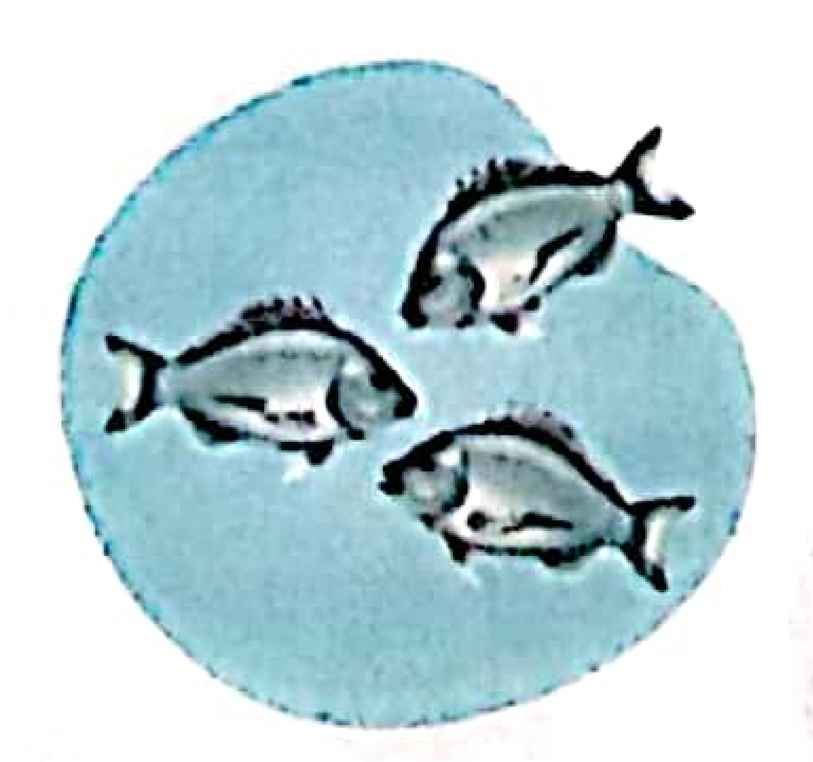
3 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

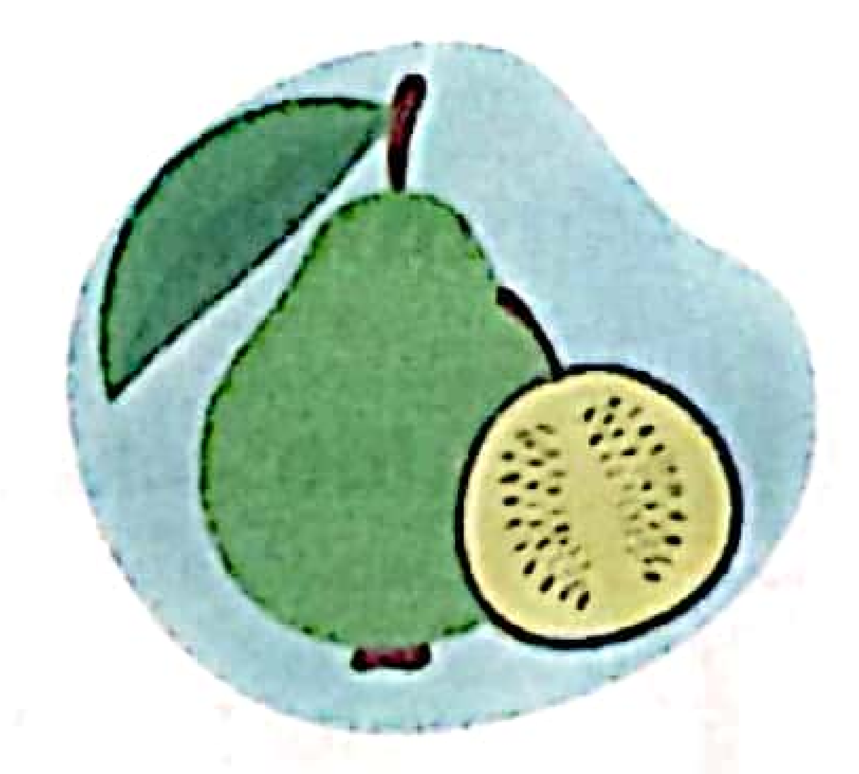
1. The farmers grow ....
   a grapes b sheep c cheese
2. Damietta is in ....
   a London b Egypt c Paris
3. The .... you see in Damietta are goats, cows and sheep.
   a colors b houses c animals
4. Damietta is a ....
   a village b farm c governorate
5. The land in Damietta is rich in ....
   a nutrients b carbon c waste



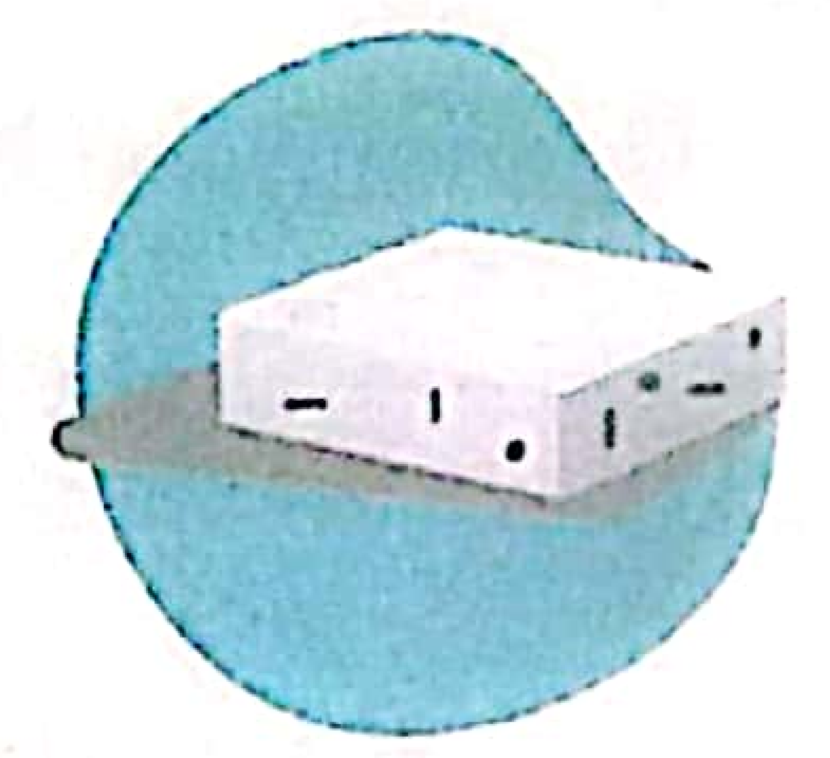
4 Complete the sentences:

اكمل الجمل:





1. Fishermen catch ....
2. Farmers can grow ....



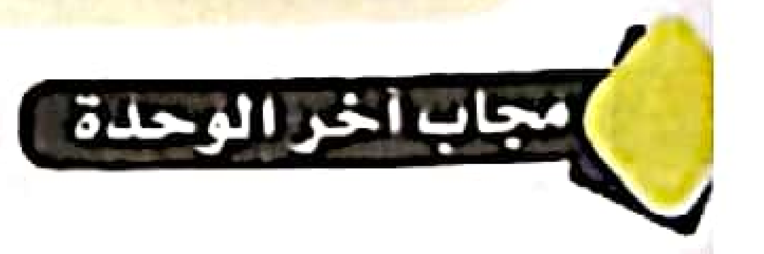


3. Domiati .... is very famous.
4. .... are animals.

5 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

Damietta - grow - raise - cheese - good



- -
- -
- -
- -
- -



Review

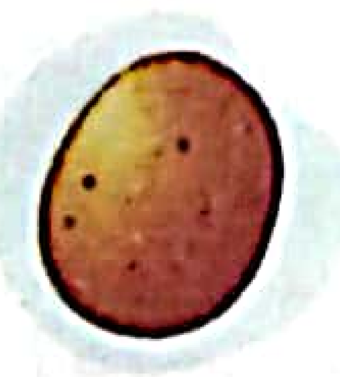


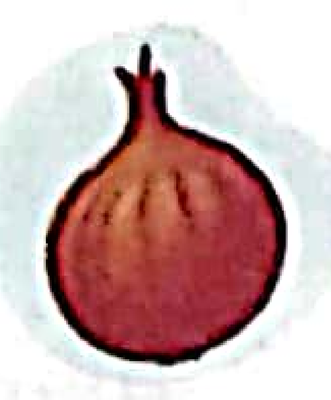
Foods and drinks الطعام والشراب

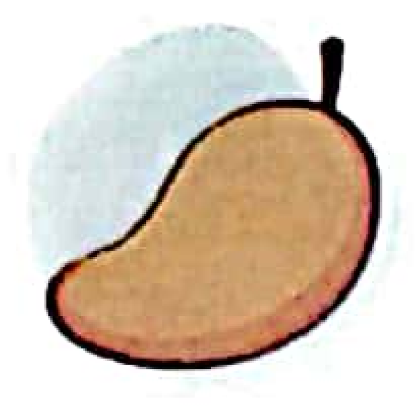

tomato
ثمرة طماطم


rice
ارز

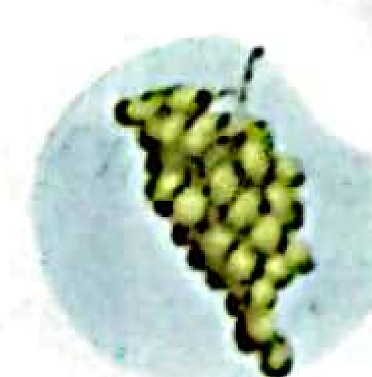

chicken
دجاجة / لحم دجاج


potato
ثمرة بطاطس

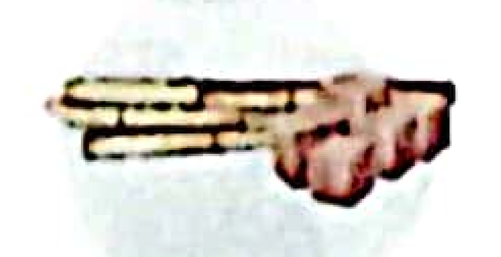

onion
بصلة


mango
ثمرة مانجو


banana
موزة


grapes
علب

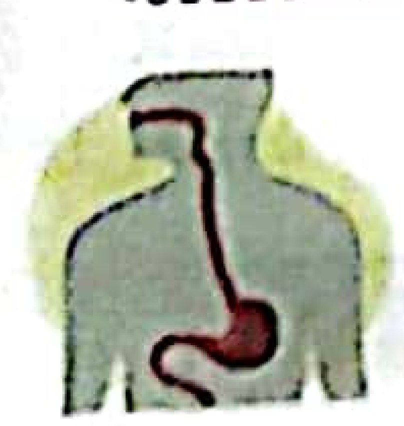

watermelon
بطيخ

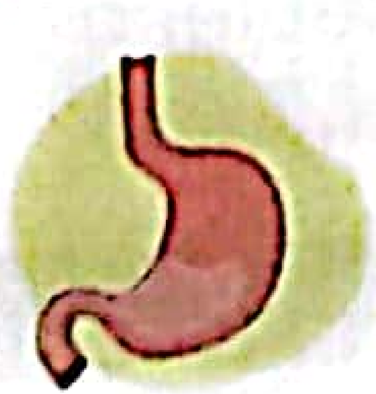

sugarcane
قصب السكر


milk
لبن

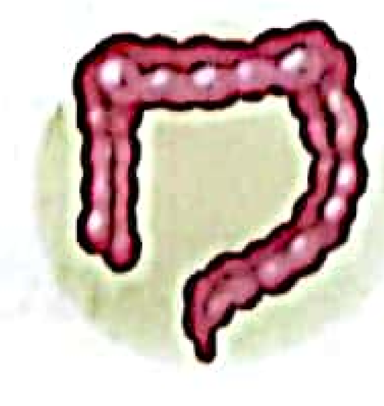
The Digestive system الجهاز الهضمى


mouth
فم


esophagus
مرئ


stomach
معدة

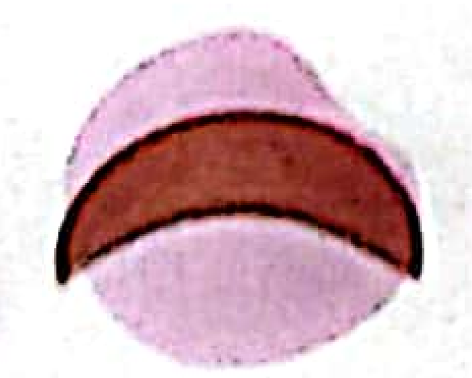

gastic juice
العصارة الهضمية


large intestine
الامعاء الغليظة


small intestine
الامعاء الدقيقة

The respiratory system الجهاز التنفسي


lungs
الرئتان


diaphragm
الحجاب الحاجز


breathe in
يتنفس (يدخل الهواء)


breathe out
يخرج الهواء

Help your child revise Unit 1. ساعد طفلك ان يراجع الوحدة الاولى.



carbon dioxide
ثانى اكسيد الكربون



oxygen
اكسچين


nose
انف

Health problems مشكلات صحية


burn
حرق

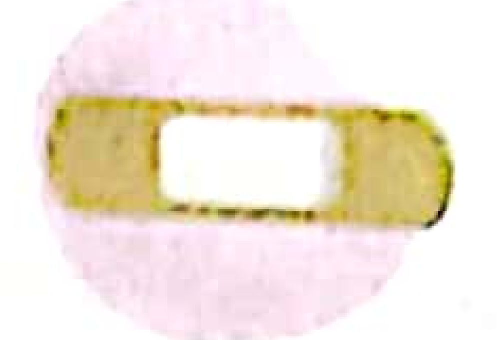

cough
يكح


sprain
يصاب بالتواء


gloves
قفازات


first-aid kit
أدوات الإسعافات الأولية


scrape
خدش «خربوش»


band-aid
لزقة جروح

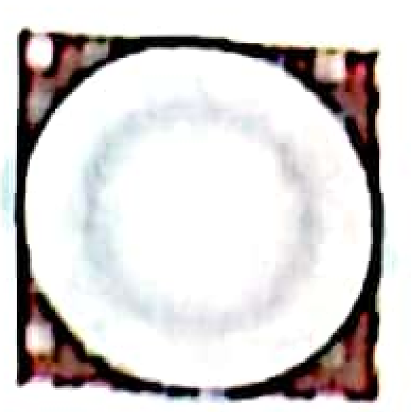

nosebleed
نزيف في الأنف


pinch nose
يضغط على الأنف

A short story [redacted]

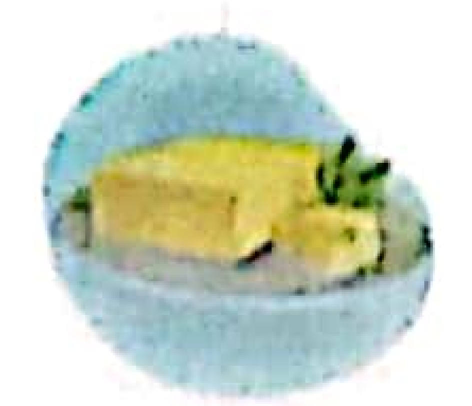

flapjacks
بسكويت شوفان


apartment
شقة


plate
طبق


square cookies
بسكويت محلى مربع الشكل


oats
شوفان


butter
زبد


sugar
سكر


honey
عسل


pan
طاسة

Pronunciation النطق



Short vowels



mom ام



bag حقيبة

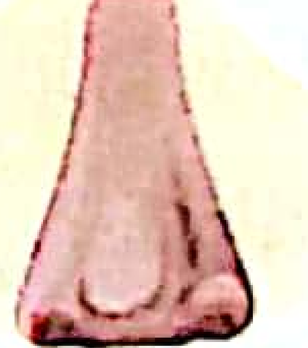


mix يخلط

Long vowels



rice أرز



nose أنف



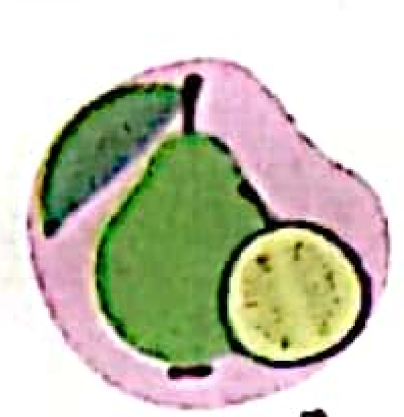
cake تورتة

Social studies الدراسات الاجتماعية





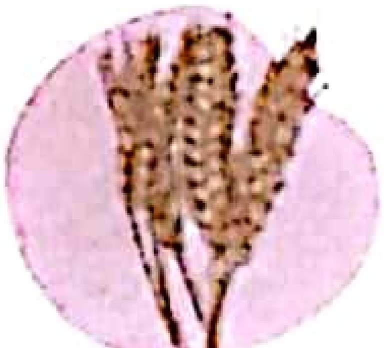
Damietta governorate
محافظة دمياط



guava
جوافة



lemons
ليمون



wheat
قمح



fisherman صياد



sheep خروف



cow بقرة



goat معزة

Grammar قواعد لغوية

- نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة أى انها تضيف للمعنى؛

- I like fruit and vegetables.

- و نستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين جملتين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية.

- I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.

ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات

- نقدم فى هذه الفقرة ارشادات تقرب بقدر الإمكان نطق الكلمات بشكل صحيح والتركيز على الأخطاء الشائعة فى النطق ويُفضَّل سماع الكلمات من قاموس معتمد.

١ لنطق كلمة (onion) بشكل صحيح انطق الحرف (o) الأول مثل نطق حرف (u) فى كلمة (bus) وانطق حرف (i) مثل نطق حرف (y) فى كلمة (yes) وحرف (o) الثانى مثل نطق حرف (o) فى كلمة second.

٢ لنطق كلمة (esophagus) بشكل صحيح انطق حرف (e) مثل نطق حرف (i) فى كلمة (in) وانطق حرف (o) مثل نطق (a) فى (want) وانطق حرفى (ph) مثل (f) وحرفى (a) و (u) مثل حرف (o) فى كلمة second.

٣ لنطق كلمة (intestine) انطق اخر جزء (tine) مثل (tin) علبة حيث أن حرف (e) آخر الكلمة غير منطوق.

٤ في كلمة (breathe) انطق حرفى (th) كما ينطقا فى كلمة (This).

٥ انطق حرفى (i) فى كلمة (dioxide) كما ينطق حرف (y) فى كلمة fly.

٦ في كلمة (diaphragm) انطق حرف (i) مثل نطق حرف (y) فى كلمة (fly) وانطق (ph) مثل حرف (f) وانطق حرف (a) الثانى كما ينطق فى كلمة (man) وحرف (g) لا ينطق.

٧ كلمة (chew) انطق (ch) مثل تش وآخر جزء (ew) ينطق مثل (ue) فى كلمة (blue).

٨ انطق حرفى (oo) فى كلمة (blood) مثل حرف (u) فى (bus).

٩ فى كلمة (scrape) انطق الجزء (rape) مثل كلمة (tape) مع اختلاف أول حرف.

١٠ انطق كلمة (aid) مثل كلمة (made) بدون حرف (m).

١١ فى كلمة (gloves) انطق حرف (o) مثل حرف (u) فى كلمة (bus).

١٢ انطق كلمة (oat) مثل كلمة (goat) بدون حرف (g).



مهارات الكتابة

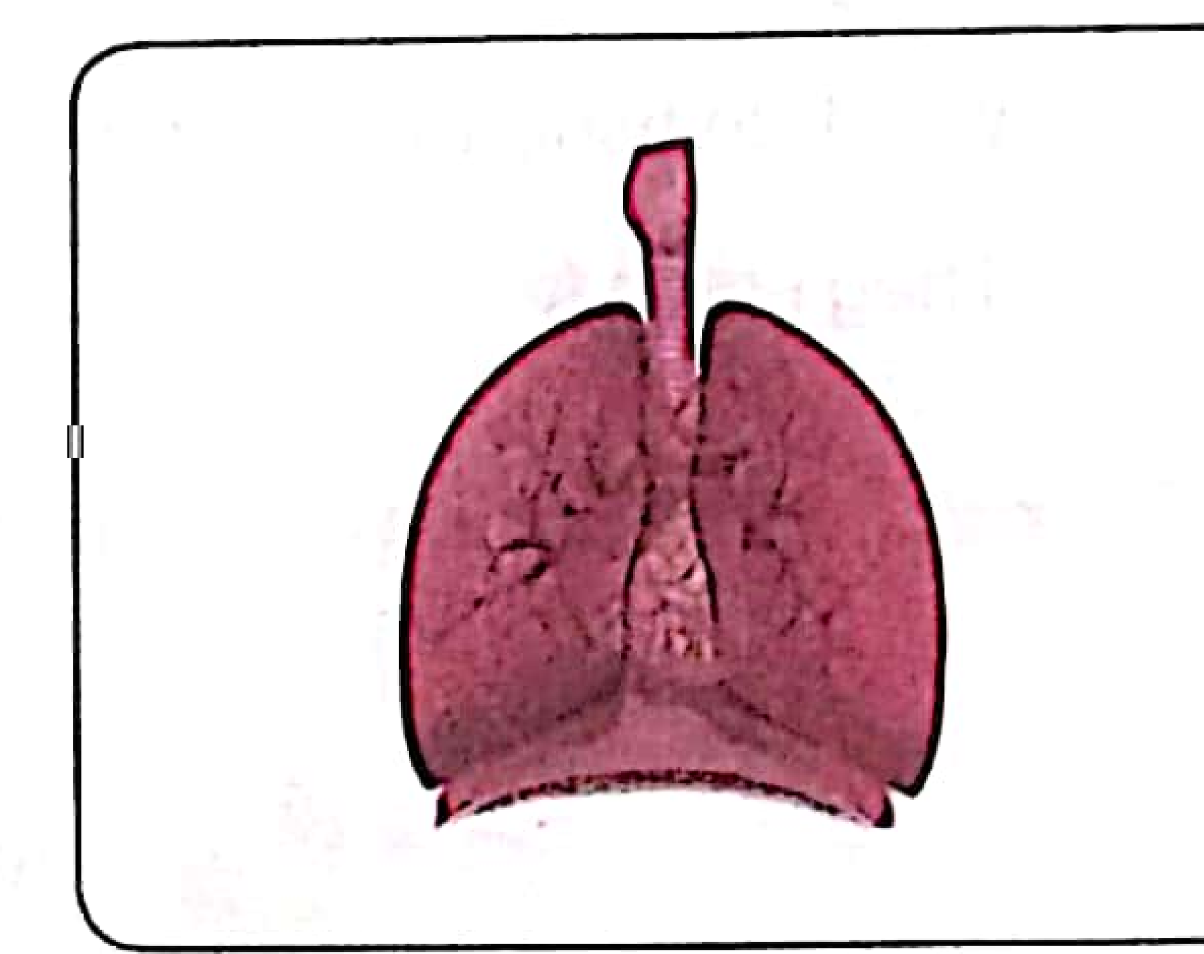
Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

healthy - vegetables - lunch - rice - chicken - bananas - grapes



① I like healthy food. I always eat vegetables and fruit. Mom cooks healthy meals.She cooks chicken and rice for lunch. We eat bananas and grapes for dessert.

healthy - smoke - exercise - plants - water



② I have a healthy respiratory system. I stay away from smoke. I exercise every day. I put plants in my balcony. I always drink plenty of water.

Damietta - grow - raise - cheese - good



③ I live in Damietta. Farmers grow rice, tomatoes and potatoes. They raise cows, goats and sheep. Domiati cheese is famous. Life is good in Damietta.

Activity 1 on Unit (1)

1 **Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:**

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(fish - guavas - are - cheese)

A : Where ❶ ------------------------------------ you from?

B : I'm from Damietta.

A : What is Damietta famous for?

B : It is famous for Domiati ❷ ------------------------------------.

A : What do farmers grow there?

B : They grow ❸ ------------------------------------ and wheat.

A : What do fishermen catch?

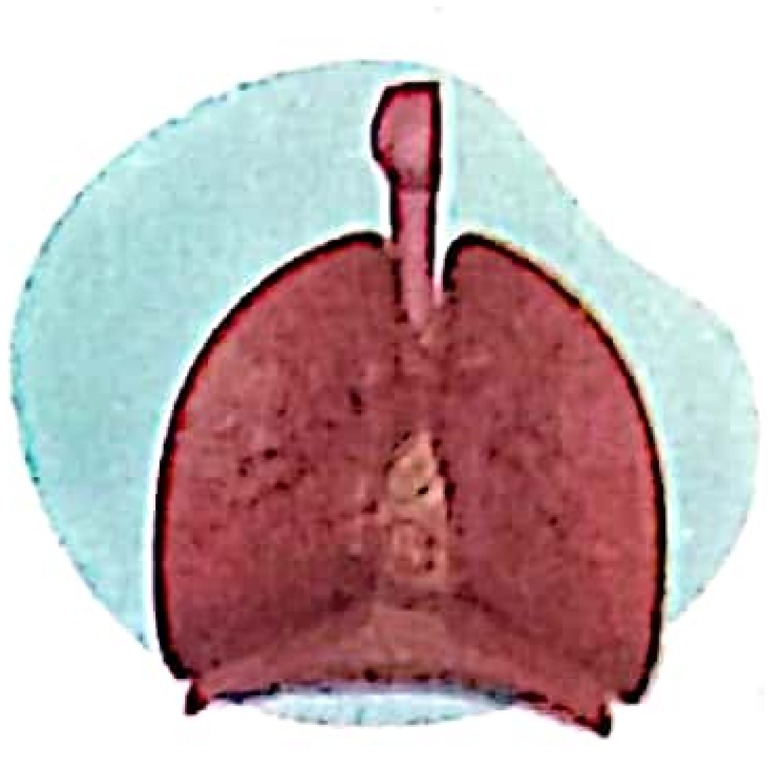
B : They catch ❹ ------------------------------------.

2 **Complete the sentences:**

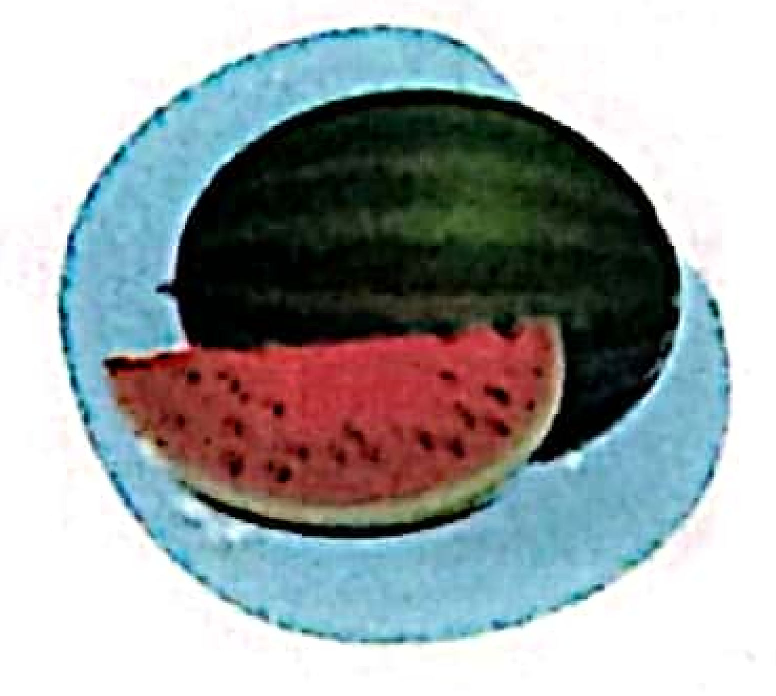
أكمل الجمل:



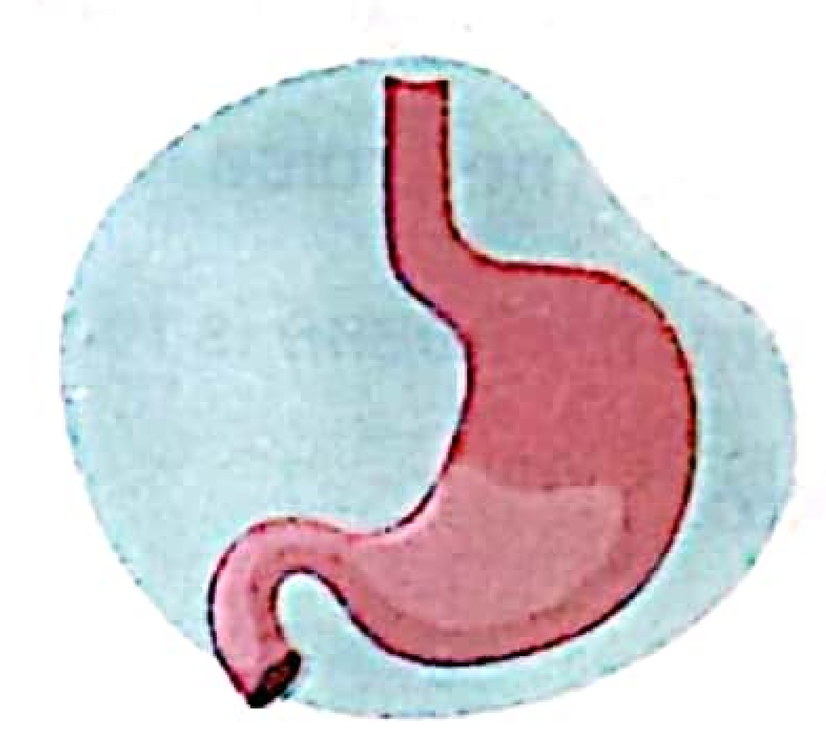
❶ Mom likes ....



❷ They are my ....



❸ I like to eat ....



❹ Our .... digests food.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 We chew food	a. We have two of these. They are inside the body.
2 Lungs	b. in your balcony.
3 Breathe	c. with our teeth.
4 Put green plants	d. Exercise.
	e. To take in oxygen and give out carbon dioxide.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Ahmed. I like chicken and mangoes. I like drinking sugarcane juice. My brother Magdy likes rice and potatoes. We go to school by bus. We do our homework at seven o'clock.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How do Ahmed and Magdy go to school?

----

2. Who likes chicken and mangoes?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 Ahmed likes drinking apple juice.		
4 Ahmed and Magdy are friends.		

5 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My nose is in the center of the ....
   a face   b teeth   c legs
2. I don't like chocolate, ... I like ice cream.
   a and   b but   c to
3. He plays football .... tennis.
   a but   b and   c so

4. I eat healthy food .... I exercise.

a but b and c to

5. Drink plenty of ....

a water b watermelon c onions

6 Read and complete: اقرأ وأكمل:

wheat - pumps - delicious - esophagus - scrape

1. Lunch looks ....!
2. The food goes down the ....
3. Our heart .... the blood.
4. Farmers grow ....
5. Wash the .... with water.

7 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. raise - Egypt - We - chickens - in.

---

2. mixes - juice - The food - the gastric - with.

---

3. breathe - We - through - nose - our.

---

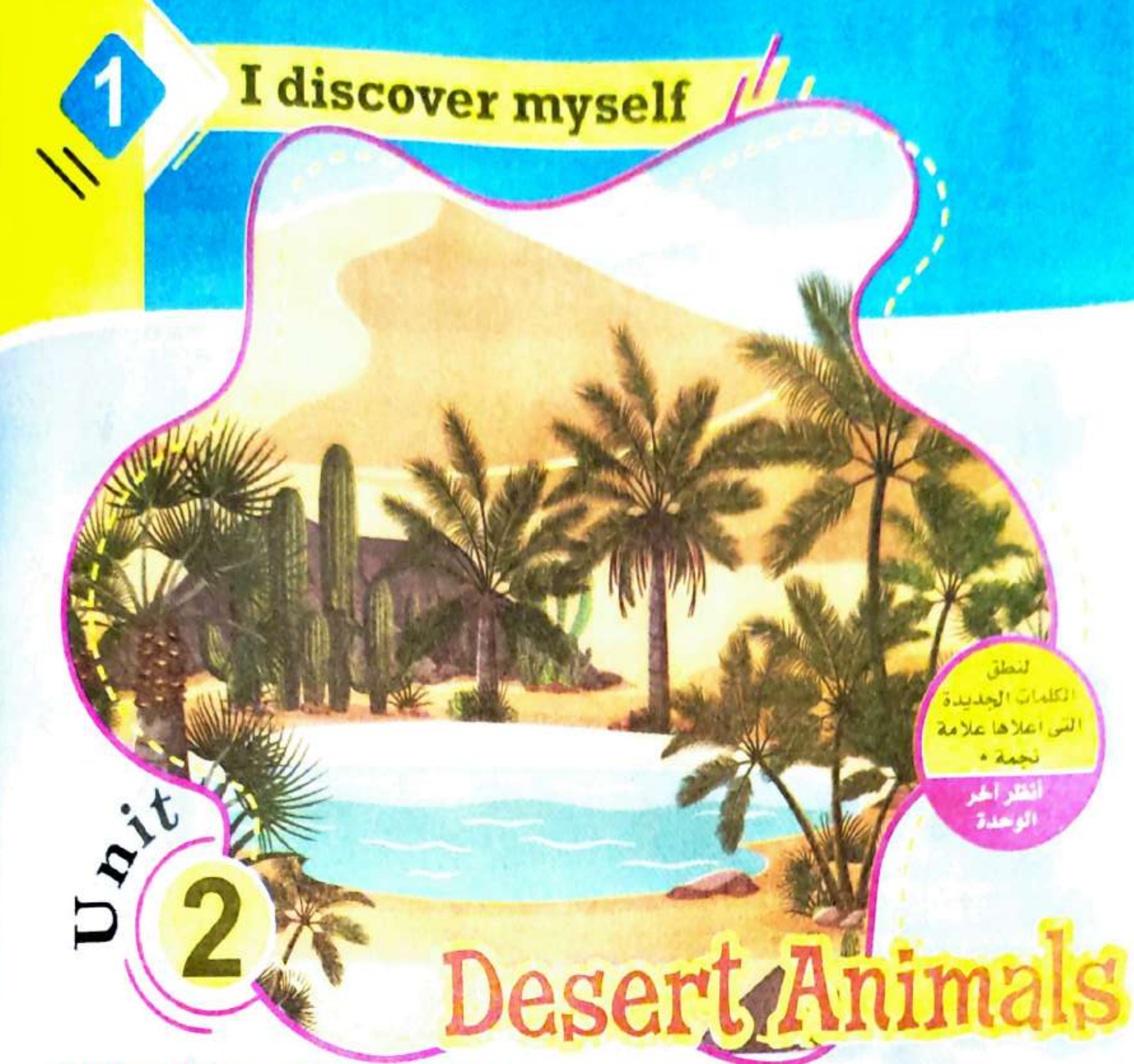
4. bodies - need - in - We - oxygen - our.

---

8 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

مجاب أخر الوحدة

healthy - smoke - exercise - plants - water



Desert Animals

Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة حيوانات صحراوية

1. Listen, read, research, and write about desert animals.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن الحيوانات الصحراوية.

2. Practice making comparisons

- يتدرب الطالب على عمل مقارنات.

3. Listen to a short story.

- يستمع الطالب إلى قصة قصيرة.

4. Learn about the difference between the /p/ and /b/ sounds.

- يتعلم الطالب عن الفرق بين صوتى /b/ and /p/.

5. Write a fact file.

- يكتب الطالب ملف حقائق.

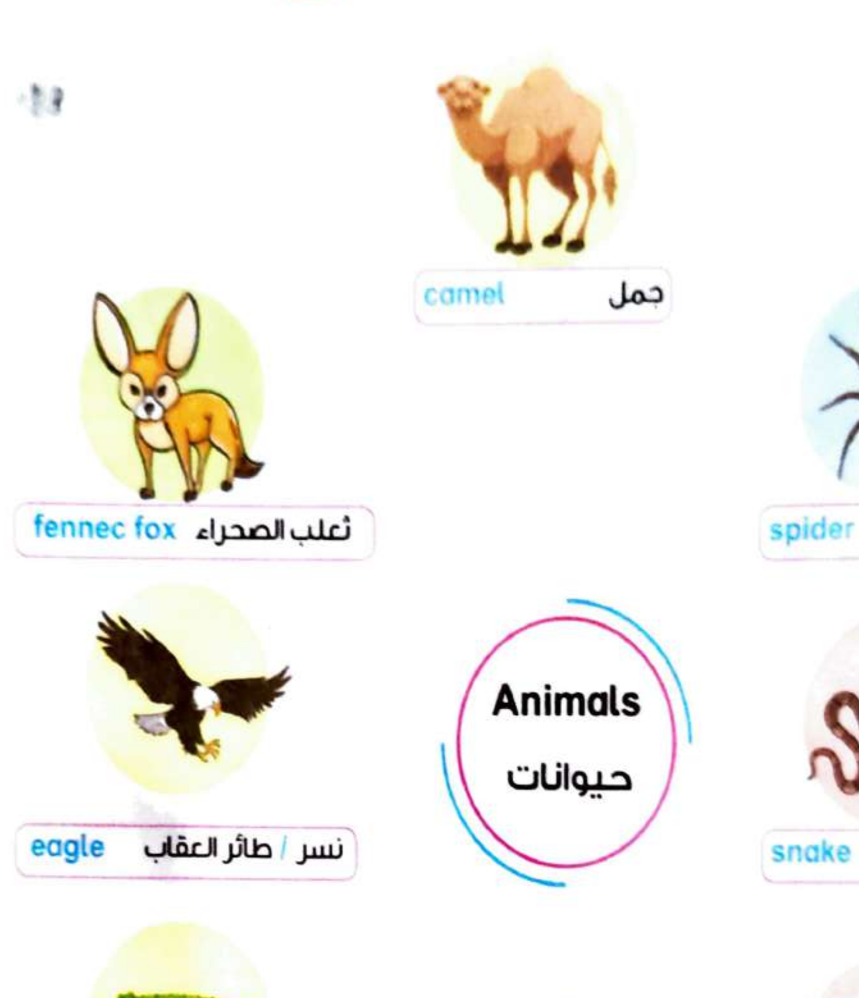
6. Research and make a poster.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وبوستر.



Animals in Egypt

Vocabulary





crocodile تمساح

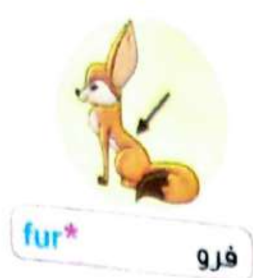


lizard سحلية



pelican* بجعة

Help your child learn about desert animals. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الحيوانات الصحراوية.







fur* فرو





feather ريش



beak منقار





wing جناح

Adjectives صفات

huge	ضخم	cute	جميل
ugly	قبيح	dangerous	خطير
scary	مخيف / مرعب	helpful	مفيد
scarier	مخيف اكثر	important	هام

Verbs افعال

control	يتحكم فى / يقيد عدد	live	يعيش

Other words كلمات أخرى

What about	ماذا عن.........؟	do a very important job	يقوم بعمل هام جدا
few	قليل	do the same job	يقوم بنفس العمل
yes / yeah	نعم		

Language Functions وظائف لغوية



Important animals

نتعلم من هذا الدرس عن صفات بعض الحيوانات وما يميز كل حيوان ويجعله مفيد للبيئة.

- Spiders are scary but they are helpful because they eat insects.

العناكب مخيفة لكنها مفيدة لأنها تأكل الحشرات.

Insects eat plants so farmers like spiders.

الحشرات تأكل النباتات لذلك يحب المزارعون العناكب.

- Crocodiles and snakes are dangerous but they are important. التماسيح والثعابين خطيرون لكنهم مهمون.

They eat insects, birds and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals.

- إنهم يأكلوا الحشرات والطيور والسحالى.
- وهذا يتحكم فى (يقيد عدد) عدد الحيوانات الصغيرة.

1 Listen and read: استمع واقرأ:

Mom : Look at all these animals that live in our country.

Sara : Look at the crocodile, it's huge!

Tarek : Huge and scary!

Sara : I think the spider is scarier.

Mom : Yeah, but spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders.

Sara : Ok, what about the snake and the crocodile? They're dangerous, aren't they?

Mom : Yes, that's true, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals.

Tarek : Eagles do the same job.

Sara : The pelican eats small fish.

Mom : You're right! We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.

Help your child learn about the importance of some animals.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن أهمية بعض الحيوانات.

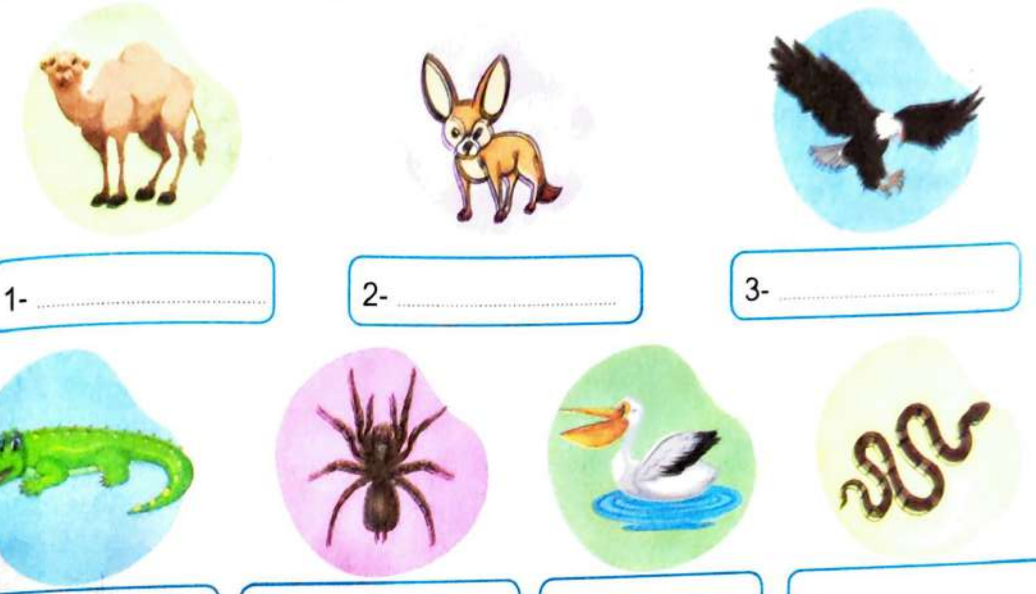
2 Listen again and answer: استمع مرة أخرى وأجب:

1. Does Tarek like crocodiles?
2. What do snakes and crocodiles eat?
3. Why do farmers like spiders?
4. What does the verb control mean?

a make the number of animals bigger.

b make the number of animals fewer.

3 Look and say. Then write : انظر وقل ثم اكتب:



1- ....
2- ....
3- ....
4- ....
5- ....
6- ....
7- ....

4 Listen again and answer : استمع مرة أخرى وأجب:

Which animals do Tarek and Sara not talk about? ....

5 What do you think? ماذا تعتقد؟

1. Which animals are scary? I think crocodiles are scary, but they control the numbers of small animals.
2. Which animals are dangerous? ....
3. Which animals are cute? ....
4. Only cute animals are important. Do you agree? ....

Activities



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

اكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الاقواس:

(scarier - helpful - crocodile - country)

Mom : Look at all these animals that lives in our ❶ ....

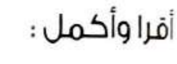
Sara : Look at the ❷ ...., it's huge!

Tarek : Huge and scary.

Sara : I think the spider is ❸ ....

Mom : Yeah, but the spider are very ❹ .... They eat insects. Farmers like spiders.

2 Read and complete:





❶ The .... eats small fish.



❷ The .... is cute .



❸ It's an ....



❹ The .... is scary.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Farmers	a. eats small fish.
2 The pelican	b. are dangerous.
3 The snakes	c. like spiders.
4 The fennec fox	d. has fur.
	e. camels.

4 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. think – crocodiles – scary – I – are.

---

2. animals – **Which** – dangerous – are?

---

3. eat – **Spiders** – insects.

---

4. wings – eagle – **The** – has – two.

---

5 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

animals - scary - helpful - dangerous - important

مجاب اخر الوحدة



Lesson 2

CLIL: Science



fennec fox ثعلب الصحراء



steppe* eagle عُقاب السهول «عقاب الصحراء»



mammals* ثدييات



mice فئران



rabbit أرنب



male مذكر



insect حشرة



female مؤنث

Places أماكن

North Africa	شمال أفريقيا	Africa	قارة أفريقيا
Europe	قارة أوروبا		

Verbs افعال

know	يعرف	hear	يسمع
lose	يفقد	fly	يطير
lift	يرفع	travel	يسافر
keep	يحافظ على		

Other words كلمات أخرى

problem	مشكلة	dangerous for	خطير على
during	أثناء	warm	دافئ
thick	سميك	around	حوالى
heat	حرارة	area	منطقة

Help your child learn about desert animals. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الحيوانات الصحراوية.

Question words كلمات الاستفهام

Where........?	أين؟	How tall.....?	كم طول «رأسى»؟
How heavy.....?	كم وزن؟	How long..........?	كم طول «أفقى»؟



Study the following

ندرس فى هذا الدرس بعض الحقائق عن الحيوانات فى الصحراء، لذلك يجب معرفة الأسئلة التى من خلالها نتعرف على ذلك الحيوان

1) Where does it live?

أين يعيش؟

للإجابة:

In + المكان.

Where does the fennec fox live?

In the deserts of North Africa.



2) How tall is it?

كم يبلغ طوله «رأسى»؟

.......**centimeters**.

3) How heavy is it?

كم وزنه....؟

About / Around......... kilogram(s).

4) How long is it?

كم طوله «أفقى».......؟

.... meters / centimeters.

5) How long does it live?

كم المدة التى يعيشها؟

Around / About .... years.

6) What does it eat?

ماذا يأكل؟

Insects, small lizards and mice.

7) Why does the fennec fox have big ears?

لماذا لدى ثعلب الصحراء أذن كبيرة؟

- So it can hear small animals and insects.

8) Why do you think the steppe eagle travels from Europe to Africa in winter?

لماذا فى رأيك يسافر عقاب السهول من أوروبا إلى أفريقيا فى الشتاء؟

- Because Africa is warmer than Europe in winter.

1 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions

يعمل الطلاب فى ثنائيات ويناقشوا الأسئلة التالية ،

1- What Egyptian desert animals do you know?

2- Is it easy to live in the desert? Why? What problems do animals have?

2 Look quickly at the fact files and answer

انظر إلى ملف الحقائق واجب عن الأسئلة ،

1- Which animal has big ears? ما الحيوان الذى لديه أذن كبيرة؟

2- Which animal can fly? ما الحيوان الذى يطير؟

3- Which animal lives for forty years? ما الحيوان الذى يعيش حتى ٤٠ عام؟

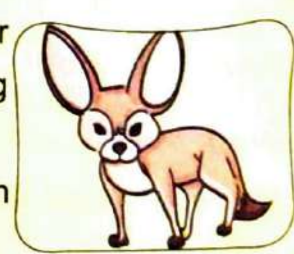
Animal fact file:

Fennec Fox:

Where does it live?	In the deserts of North Africa
How tall is it?	20 centimeters
How heavy is it?	about 1 kilogram
How long is it?	about 30 - 40 centimeters
What does it eat?	insects, small lizards, mice

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are big, really big! The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals.

During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fox loses heat from its ears. At night it's cold. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm.



Help your child read the animal fact file and learn about animals.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ملف الحقائق ويتعلم عن الحيوانات.

Animal fact file:

Steppe Eagle

How long does it live?	around 30-40 years
How heavy is it?	around 3 kilograms
How long is it?	from wing to wing around 170 centimeters

Look at the eagle flying. It's beautiful, isn't it? The steppe eagle travels from Europe to Africa in winter. It lives in very big, open areas.
It eats other birds, small mammals and rabbits. When it opens its wings, it's longer than you!
The female is bigger and heavier than the male.

3 Read the fact files again. Choose the best answer:

اقرأ ملف الحقائق واختر أفضل إجابة:

1. Why does the fennec fox have big ears?

   a So it can see small animals and insects.

   b So it can hear small animals and insects.

2. Why do you think the steppe eagle travels from Europe to Africa in winter?

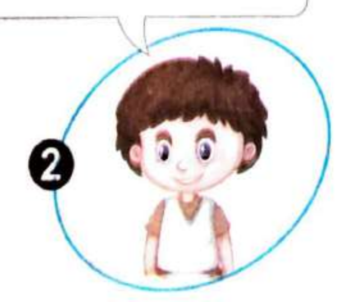
   a Because Africa is bigger than Europe.

   b Because Africa is warmer than Europe.

4 What did you learn? Work with a partner. Ask and answer

ماذا تعلمت؟ اعمل مع زميلك؟ واسأل واجب:





6 Think and write:



Look at the snake. What is it doing? How does it feel? Why?

The snake is lifting its head up. It probably feels scared. It saw someone or something.

انظر إلى الثعبان. ماذا يفعل؟ ربما يشعر؟ لماذا؟

الثعبان يرفع رأسه لأعلى. ربما يشعر بالخوف. رأى شخص أو شئ ما.



Look at the eagle flying. What can it see? How does it feel?

It saw a rabbit. It probably feels happy.

انظر إلى طائر العقاب وهو يطير. ماذا يرى؟ وبما يشعر؟

رأى ارنب ربما يشعر بالسعادة.

Activities



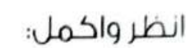
1 Read and match:

اقراء وصل:




A	B
1 The eagle eats	a. lives in the desert.
2 Africa is warmer	b. than Europe.
3 The fennec fox	c. heat from its ears.
4 The fox loses	d. small lizards and mice.
	e. heat from its eyes.

2 Read and complete:





1. Its ears are ....



2. The steppe .... is around 3 kilograms.



3. It's a ....



4. I can see a ....

3 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The steppe eagle travels from Europe to Africa in winter. It lives in very big open areas. It eats other birds, small mammals and rabbits. When it opens its wings, it's longer than you. The female is bigger and heavier than the male.

A- Answer the following questions:

1- Where does the steppe eagle live?

---

2 - When does the steppe eagle travel from Europe to Africa?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
③ The male is smaller than the female.		
④ The steppe eagle eats rabbits.		

4 Rearrange the following to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

1. fennec fox – ears – The – big – to hear – needs.

---

2. eats – It – birds – other.

---

3. long – does – How – live – it?

---

4. keeps – The fur – warm – it.

---

5 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

إختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The fennec fox's ears are ....
   a small b big c little
2. During the day, it's .... in the desert.
   a cold b cool c hot
3. The fox's thick .... keeps it warm.
   a fur b wing c beak
4. A: How .... is the fennec fox? B: About 1 kilogram.
   a tall b heavy c long
5. The steppe eagle eats rabbits and small ....
   a camels b mammals c elephants
6. A: How .... is the fox? B: 20 centimeters.
   a tall b heavy c fast

Lesson 3

★ Language focus

Vocabulary


camel جمل


flat feet أقدام مسطحة


fur فرو

Camels and horses
الجمال والخيول


milk لبن


sand رمل


mouse فأر


horse حصان


elephant فيل

Adjectives الصفات

Long Adjectives صفات طويلة		Short Adjectives صفات قصيرة	
amazing	مدهش	noisy	مزعج
delicious	لذيذ	strong	قوى
beautiful	جميل	angry	غاضب
careful	حريص	old	كبير السن
perfect	رائع / ممتاز - مناسب جدا	small	صغير
dangerous	خطير	thin	رفيع
		nice	جميل
		long	طويل

Help your child learn about camels and horses. ساعد طفلك يتعلم عن الجمال والخيول.

Unit 2 Desert Animals

Verbs افعال

carry	يحمل	have	يملك
cross	يعبر		

Other words كلمات أخرى

special way	طريقة خاصة	clothes	ملابس
fresh water	ماء عذب	kph	كيلو متر / ساعة

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Comparative adjectives مقارنة الصفات

- نستخدم الصفات لوصف الأسماء.

- The mouse is small.

مقارنة شيئين

- يمكن أيضاً أن نستخدم الصفات للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين كالآتى:

1 الصفات القصيرة

- نضيف (er) آخر الصفة عند المقارنة:

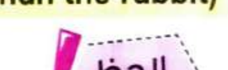
اسم + than + er + صفة قصيرة + اسم

- A mouse is **smaller than** an elephant.



- يمكن حذف (than) وآخر اسم إذا تم ذكر الاسم فى جملة سابقة كالآتى:

- A rabbit is small. I think the mouse is **smaller**. ~~(than the rabbit)~~



- عند إضافة (er) للصفة:

- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف y + حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ier):

scary → scarier heavy → heavier

- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف متحرك + حرف ساكن نضاعف الحرف الساكن:

big → bigger thin → thinner

- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضيف (r) فقط

nice → nicer

2 الصفات الطويلة

- لا نضيف (er) للصفات الطويلة عند مقارنة شيئين:
- نضيف قبل الصفة الطويلة less / more:

beautiful → less / more beautiful

- أقل من less + صفة طويلة + than
- أكثر من more + صفة طويلة + than

Help your child learn about comparisons. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم المقارنة.

اسم + more / less + صفة طويلة + than + اسم

- Eagles are more beautiful than insects.
- Crocodiles are more dangerous than fish.
- Camels are more perfect for the desert than horses.



➤ لا تستخدم more / less مع الصفات القصيرة ولا تستخدم (er) مع الصفات الطويلة.

1 Read about camels and check your answers. What is surprising about camels?

اقرأ عن الجمال وتأكد من إجابتك. ما الشئ المدهش عن الجمال؟

Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes!
Camels are perfect for the desert. Here's why:



1 Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand.



2 Camels can live without water for a long time.



3 Camels have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

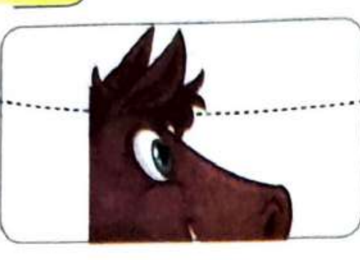
- But be careful! Camels are very noisy and they can get angry.

2 Look at the fact file and read the differences between horses and camels.

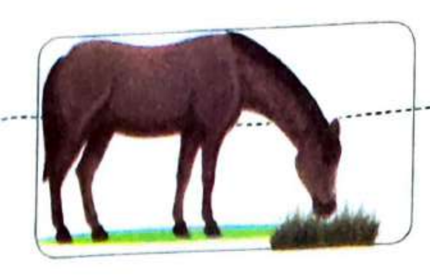
انظر إلى ملف الحقائق واقرأ الفرق بين الخيول والجمال.

	Horse	Camel
How tall is it?	1.4 - 1.8 cm	1.8 - 2.0 m
How heavy is it?	380 - 550 kg	400 - 650 kg
How fast is it?	88 kph	65 kph
How long does it live?	25 - 30 years	40 years

Help your child read facts about camels and horses ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ حقائق عن الجمال والخيول.



Horses have large, beautiful eyes.



Horses have strong teeth. They like to eat grass and drink fresh water.

3 Read and answer (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Horses are slower than camels.		
2 Camels are taller than horses.		
3 Horses are heavier than camels.		
4 Camels live longer than horses.		
5 Horses are more perfect for the desert.		

4 Look and complete the table : انظر وأكمل الجدول:

tall	taller
....	heavier
fast	....
....	bigger
beautiful	more ....
delicious	.... delicious
....	shorter

5 Write sentences to compare these animals: اكتب جمل للمقارنة بين الحيوانات:

1. (snake / fox / dangerous)
   A snake is more dangerous than a fox.
2. (pelican's beak / eagle's beak / long) A pelican's beak is ....
3. (elephant / hippo / big) ....
4. (giraffe / horse / tall) ....
5. (crocodile / fish / dangerous) ....
6. (camel / fennec fox / small) ....
7. (ice cream / butter / delicious) ....

Activities



1 Read and complete: اقرأ واكمل:





❶ The mouse is .... than an elephant.

❷ .... are amazing.





❸ Camels have .... feet.

❹ .... have beautiful eyes.

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 Camels can live	a. is delicious.
2 Camels' milk	b. perfect for the desert.
3 Camels are	c. without water for a long time.
4 Horses like to drink	d. fresh water.
	e. are ugly.

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The camel is .... than the horse.
   a strong b stronger c strongest
2. The horse is shorter .... the camel.
   a that b the c than
3. Horses are .... than camels.
   a fast b fastest c faster
4. Camels are .... than horses.
   a more tall b tall c taller

5. The snake is .... dangerous than the fox.
- a more
- b most
- c many

6. Dogs are .... than elephants.
- a less thin
- b thinner
- c thin

7. Parrots are noisier .... spiders.
- a then
- b than
- c that

8. I think cats are .... than dogs.
- a nicer
- b nice
- c more nice

9. Camels are .... for the desert than horses.
- a perfect
- b perfecter
- c more perfect

10. Ice cream is .... than butter.
- a delicious
- b more delicious
- c the delicious

4 Read and compelet: اقرأ واكمل:

teeth - faster - fur - water - perfect

1. Camels can live without .... for a long time.
2. We can use camels' .... to make clothes.
3. Camels are .... for the desert.
4. Horses have strong ....
5. Horses are .... than camels.

5 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. scarier – snake – The – is – the – spider - than.

....

2. giraffe – taller – The – is – than – horse – the.

....

3. are – than – more – Crocodiles – dangerous – fish.

....

4. A mouse – is – than – smaller – an – elephant.

....



★ A short story
- Pronunciation & Math

Vocabulary



pelican بجعة



hungry جوعان



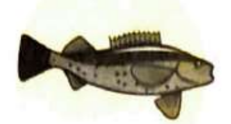
paw* كف الحيوان



bear* دب



claw* مخلب الحيوان



juicy fish سمكة عصيرية (طرية)



beak منقار

Verbs افعال

whisper	يهمس	lift	يرفع
fly away	يطير بعيدًا	shout	يصيح
reach	يصل إلى	look scared	يبدو خائف

Other words كلمات آخرى

Excuse me	اعذرني	interesting	شيق
fun	متعة	boring	ممل
surprised	مندهش		

Help your child learn new words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

1 Look at the pictures and say: انظر إلى الصورة وقل،

Describe the bear.

Describe the pelican.

Why does the bear look angry?


/p/ pelican


/b/ bear

2 Read and listen. Where is the fish at the end of the story:

اقرأ واستمع. أين السمكة فى نهاية القصة؟

The Pelican and the Bear

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, juicy fish.

The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its paw.

The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear sees the pelican. The pelican sees the bear.

paw

claw

"Excuse me," the pelican says, "that's my fish."

The bear is surprised and angry. "Pelican, look at my claws. Now look at my teeth. That's my fish."

The pelican looks scared. "I'm sorry, Bear," it whispers.

The bear is stronger than the pelican. The bear is happy because it has a big fish for dinner.



Then the bear looks down. Oh no! It can't see the fish. It can't see the pelican. "Pelican, where are you?" Bear shouts.

There is no pelican. But he can hear the happy pelican flying away with the fish in its mouth.

Help your child read the story and answer the questions. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer:

اعمل مع زميلك واسأل واجب:

1. Which animal reaches for the fish first? ١- ما الحيوان الذى وصل للسمكة أولاً؟
2. Which animal is angry? ٢- ما الحيوان الغاضب؟
3. Is the pelican really scared? ٣- هل البجعة خائفة جداً؟
4. How does the bear feel at the end of the story? ٤- كيف يشعر الدب فى آخر القصة؟

4 Do you like the story? Explain your answer:

هل تحب القصة؟ اشرح اجابتك:

fun - interesting - OK - boring - I don't understand

1. I think the story is .... I like it.
2. It isn't .... I understand it.

5 Think and write :

فكر واكتب:

1. Which animal is stronger, the bear or the pelican? Why?

١- ما الحيوان الأقوى الدب أم البجعة ؟ لماذا؟

- I think the bear is stronger because it has ....

....

2. Which animal is more intelligent, the bear or the pelican? Why?

١- أى حيوان أذكى الدب أم البجعة؟ لماذا؟

- I think ....

....

Think!

1. Work with a partner. Read and choose. اقرأ واختر مع زميلك:
   a. It's the bear's fish.
   b. It's the pelican's fish.
2. Complete the sentences. اكمل الجمل:
   a. I think the pelican / bear is right because

....

....

   b. I think the pelican / bear is wrong because

....

....



★ **Listen and say:** استمع وقل

/p/ & /b/

ندرس فى هذا الدرس نطق حرفى (/b/) و (/p/) والفرق بينهما حيث فى حرف (/p/) نضغط على الشفتين بقوة ويندفع الهواء من الفم عند نطق الحرف ولكن فى حرف (/b/) لا نضغط على الشفتين مع عدم اندفاع هواء من الفم حيث يشبه حرف (ب) فى اللغة العربية .





Help your child know the difference between the /b/ and /p/ sounds.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف الفرق بين الصوتين /b/ و /p/.



- الكسر يتكون من جزئين الجزء العلوي يسمى البسط والجزء السفلي يسمى المقام ويوضع بينهما شرطة الكسر،

numerator البسـط → 1

denominator المقام → 2

$$\frac{1}{2}$$

- يمكن أن نستخدم الكسور للتعبير عن عدد صحيح وغير صحيح فمثلاً $\frac{4}{2}$ هو كسر يمثل الرقم (2) وهو عدد صحيح و $\frac{1}{2}$ يمثل (0.5) وهو عدد غير صحيح

ولاحظ التالي،



هنا البيتزا غير مقسمة لذلك فإن قيمتها بالكسور = $\frac{1}{1}$



هنا البيتزا مقسمة إلى أربع أجزاء $\frac{4}{4} = 1$



هنا أخذنا جزء وتبقى ثلاثة أجزاء $\frac{4-1}{4} = \frac{3}{4}$



هنا أخذنا جزئين وتبقى جزئين $\frac{4-2}{4} = \frac{2}{4} = \frac{1}{2}$

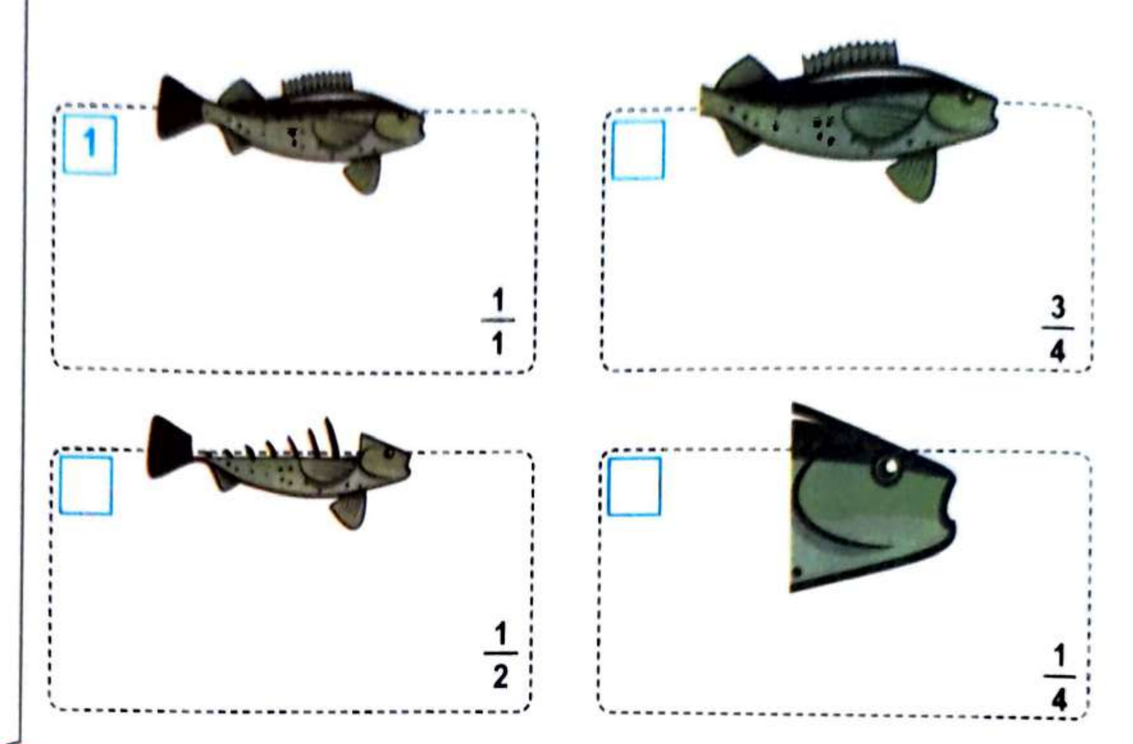


هنا أخذنا ثلاثة أجزاء وتبقى جزء $\frac{4-3}{4} = \frac{1}{4}$

Help your child learn about fractions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الكسور

1 Look and put in descending order:

انظر ورتب تنازلي (من الكبير للصغير)



2 Listen and check your answers:



Did you know?

We use fractions in everyday life. For example, here's a simple milkshake recipe: $\frac{1}{2}$ a glass of milk, $\frac{1}{4}$ cup of banana, $\frac{1}{4}$ cup of vanilla ice cream.

هل تعلم

نستخدم الكسور في حياتنا اليومية. فعلى سبيل المثال هذه وصفة بسيطة لعمل مخفوق اللبن «ميلك شيك» : $\frac{1}{2}$ كوب لبن، $\frac{1}{4}$ كوب موز، $\frac{1}{4}$ كوب آيس كريم بالفانيليا.

Activities



1 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 The pelican	a. has claws.
2 The bear	b. a big beak.
3 The pelican has	c. is flying away.
4 The bear is	d. is the tallest animal.
	e. stronger than a pelican.

2 Look and complete:

انظر وأكمل:



1 The .... wants a fish.

2 It's a ....



3 I want to eat a....................

4 It's my ....

3 Read and compelet:

اقرأ واكمل:

Bees - peas - beak - bird - bear

1. A .... is in the river.
2. The pelican has a ....
3. The .... is in the sky.
4. The .... are green.
5. .... give us honey

4 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. pelican – The – scared - looks.

2. animal – is – Which – angry?

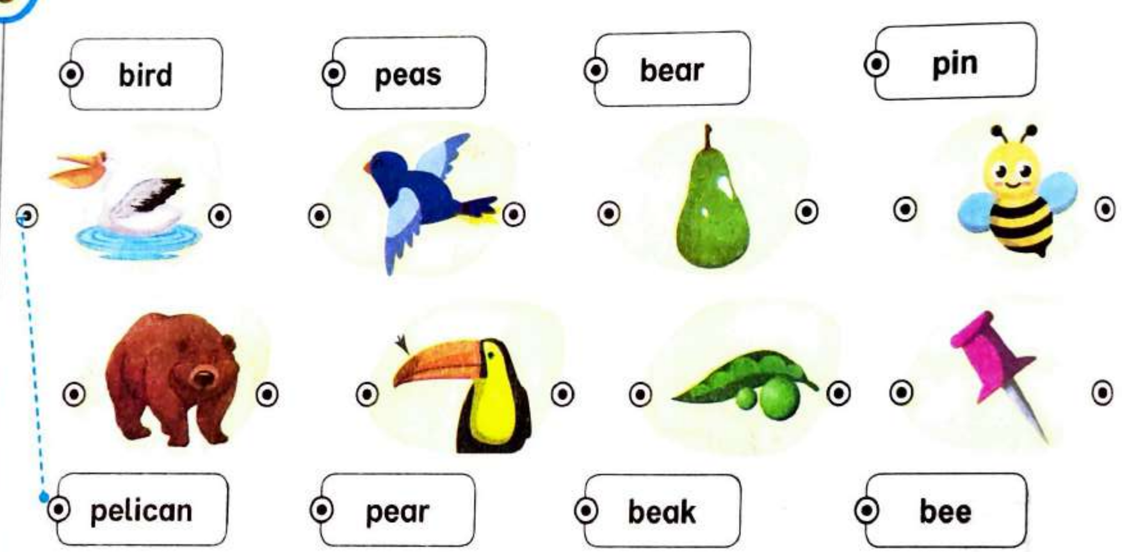
3. can – The bear – hear – the happy – pelican – flying away.

4. is – than – the – The bear – pelican - stronger.

5 Look and put in the descending order: انظر ورتب تنازلى:

$\frac{3}{4}$ - $\frac{1}{2}$ - $\frac{1}{1}$ - $\frac{1}{4}$

6 Match:



7 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

pelican - bear - eat - fish - hungry - happy.



Lessons 5&6

★ Animal fact file

Vocabulary


rhim gazelle* غزال الريم


Sahara Desert الصحراء الكبرى


grass عشب/حشائش


yellow-white coat صوف أصفر وأبيض


naked mole*rat فأر الجلد العاري


hoof (hooves) حافر (حافرين)


leaves أوراق الشجر


plant نبات


horns قرون


dolphin دولفين


cream لون كريمى

Verbs افعال

look beautiful	يبدو جميل	walk	يمشي
protect	يحمي	help	يساعد
need	يحتاج	look for	يبحث عن

Other words كلمات أخرى

eastern Africa	شرق إفريقيا	special	مميز	temperature	درجة حرارة
strong	قوي	get ill	يمرض	mammals	ثدييات

Animal fact file:

Rhim gazelle

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. They have hooves on their feet. These hooves help them walk on the sand. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water .



How long is a rhim gazelle's horn?	20 - 30 cm
How heavy is a rhim gazelle?	20 - 30 kg
How long does it live?	about 14 years
What color is its coat?	cream or yellow-white

1 Read again and answer T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ مرة ثانية وأجب صح أو خطأ :

	True	False
1 Rhim gazelles live near the sea.		
2 Rhim gazelles eat plants and leaves.		
3 Rhim gazelles have short horns.		
4 Rhim gazelles have dark-colored coats.		
5 Rhim gazelles live for about 14 years.		

2 Think about an animal you like. Look at the chart and find out

فكر فى حيوان تحبه. أنظر إلى الجدول واكتشف :

1. Write down everything you know about the animal.
2. Think what information you need.

- What do they eat?
- Where do they live?
- How big are they?
- Why are they special?

3 Do some research and write what you learned:

قم بعمل بحث واكتب ما تعلمته:

K What I Know ما أعرفه	W What I Want to Know ما أريد أن أعرفه	L What I Learned ما تعلمته
Dolphins are not dangerous. They are mammals not fish.		

A POSTER ABOUT AN UNPOPULAR ANIMAL.

بوستر عن حيوان غير مشهور

1 Work in groups. Think and research:

اعمل فى مجموعات. فكر وابحث:

- Find an animal that is not popular.

- **Where does it live?** أين يعيش؟
- **Why isn't it popular?** لماذا هو غير مشهور؟
- **What does it eat?** ماذا يأكل؟
- **Why is it special?** لماذا هو مميز؟

2 Read and do:

اقرأ وافعل:

1. Draw or find some pictures you can use.
2. Make your poster.



Naked Mole Rat

The naked mole rat lives in eastern Africa.

It has big teeth and no hair.

It can't control its body temperature because it has no hair.



But there are two things that make the mole rat special:

1- It doesn't get ill.

2- It lives for a very long time (31 years).

Scientists want to learn all about mole rats. They're not cute animals, but they are amazing!

Activities



1 Look and complete:

انظر واكمل:



❶ This is a rhim ....



❷ They have yellow-white ....



❸ They have .... on their feet.



❹ They have long ....

2 Read the following and answer the question:

اقرأ الآتى واجب عن الأسئلة :

My name is Ali. Last Friday I went to the zoo with my family. I saw a lot of animals there. I saw monkeys. They are very funny. I gave them nuts and bananas. The giraffe is very tall. The elephant is very big. I like lions but they are very dangerous. I saw a lot of snakes.

A: Answer the following questions.

1- When did Ali go to the zoo?

- -

2 - What did the monkeys eat ?

- -

Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
The lion is very cute.		
The elephant is very big.		

Rearrange the following to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحاً:

1. long – does – How – live – it?

- -

2. very – look – beautiful – Rhim gazellas.

- -

3. dangerous – not – are – Dolphins.

- -

4. have – They – big – teeth.

- -

4 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

rhim gazella - live - eat - horns - hooves

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

Review



Animals حيوانات




fennec fox
ثعلب الصحراء


camel جمل


spider عنكبوت


eagle طائر العقاب


snake ثعبان



crocodile تمساح


pelican بجعة

Animals body parts أجزاء جسم الحيوان


beak منقار



fur فرو


feather ريش


wing جناح

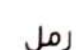
Camels and horses الجمال والخيول


camel جمل


flat feet
اقدام مسطحة


milk لبن


sand رمل

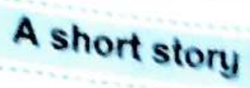



mouse فأر



horse حصان


elephant فيل



A short story قصة قصيرة



pelican بجعة



bear دب



juicy fish سمكة عصيرية



claw مخلب




paw كف حيوان



beak منقار

Pronunciation

/b/



bird طائر



bee نحلة



bear دب



beak منقار

/p/



pelican بجعة



pear كمثرى



pin دبوس



peas بسلة

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Comparative adjectives مقارنة الصفات

1 نستخدم الصفات لوصف الأسماء

- The crocodile is scary.

2 يمكن أيضًا أن نستخدم الصفات للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين كالآتى

1 الصفات القصيرة

- نضيف (er) آخر الصفة

اسم + صفة قصيرة + er + than + اسم

- The spider is scarier than the crocodile.

لاحظ !

- يمكن حذف (than) وآخر اسم إذا تم ذكر الاسم فى جملة سابقة كالآتى:
- The crocodile is scary. I think the spider is scarier.

2 الصفات الطويلة

- لا نضيف (er) للصفات الطويلة عند المقارنة.
- نضيف قبل الصفة الطويلة less / more.

beautiful → less / more beautiful

اسم + more / less + صفة طويلة + than + اسم

- Eagles are more beautiful than insects.

Writing Skills مهارات الكتابة

animals - scary - helpful - dangerous - important



1. Many animals live in our country. Crocodiles are huge and scary. Spiders are helpful. Snakes are dangerous. Animals are important

camels - beautiful - carry - milk - fur



2. Camels are amazing. They're beautiful. They can carry things and people. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes.

rhim gazella - live - eat - horns - hooves



3. Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They eat grass. They have long horns. They have hooves on their feet.

ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات

❶ لنطق كلمة (pelican) بشكل صحيح انطق الحرف (a) مثل نطق حرف (o) فى كلمة (second).

❷ لنطق كلمة (fur) انطق حرفى (ur) مثل نطق حرفى (ir) فى كلمة (girl).

❸ فى كلمة (steppe eagle) انطق كلمة (steppe) مثل نطق كلمة (step) بمعنى خطوة.



❹ في كلمة (mammal) انطق حرف (a) الاول كما ينطق فى كلمة (man) وحرف(a) الثانى مثل نطق حرفى (o) فى كلمة (second).

❺ فى كلمة (bear) تنطق مثل كلمة (care) مع اختلاف اول حرف.

❻ انطق كلمة (claw) وكلمة (paw) مثل نطق كلمة (draw) مع اختلاف اول حرف.

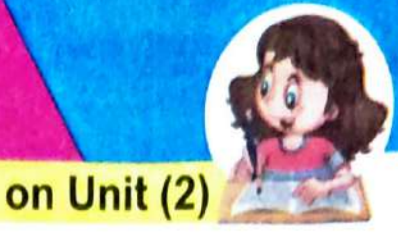
❼ انطق كلمة (pear) مثل كلمة (care) مع اختلاف اول حرف.

❽ انطق كلمة (pea) مثل نطق كلمة (bee) مع اختلاف اول حرف.

❾ فى كلمة (rhim gazella) انطق الجزء (rhim) مثل كلمة (him) مع عدم نطق حرف (h) لانه (silent) أي انها تنطق (rim) وانطق (gazella) بحيث ينطق (a) مثل نطق حرف (o) فى كلمة (second)ولا تنطق حرف (e) الاخير حيث ينطق آخر مقطع (zella) مثل (zel).

❿ انطق كلمة (mole) فى كلمة (naked mole rat) مثل نطق كلمة (goal) مع اختلاف اول حرف.

Activity 2 on Unit (2)



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

(scary - live - pelican - fish)

Ahmed : Look at this picture. What is this?

Hani : This is a ❶ ------------------------------------.

Ahmed : Do you think it is ❷ ------------------------------------?

Hani : No, I don't. It eats small ❸ ------------------------------------.

Ahmed : Where does it ❹ ------------------------------------?

Hani : It lives in lakes.

2 Look and complete:

انظر واكمل:



❶ A .... eats small fish.



❷ The .... is huge.



❸ It's a ....



❹ It's a ....

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A

1. The fennec fox
2. The camel can live
3. Horses have
4. A pelican

B

a. without water for a long time.
b. has a beak.
c. lives in the desert.
d. large beautiful eyes.
e. than bears.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة :

My name is Hani. My uncle lives in Fayoum. He has a big farm. He has a lot of animals. I see cows on the farm. I like cows very much. They aren't dangerous. The cows gives us meat and milk. I like to drink milk and eat cheese. Cows are mammals. They are very useful.

A: Answer the following questions.

1- Where does Hani's uncle live? ....

2 - What does Hani's uncle have? ....

B: Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 Cows are very dangerous		
4 Cows are mammals.		

5 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The giraffe is .... than the horse.
   a tall b taller c tallest
2. An elephant is .... than a hippo.
   a big b more big c bigger
3. A snake is more dangerous .... a fox.
   a then b that c than
4. The .... has a long wing.
   a fox b eagle c dolphin
5. A mouse is .... than an elephant.
   a smaller b less small c smallest

6 Read and complete:

اقرأ ثم أكمل:

claws - noisier - are - feet - than

1. The camel has large, flat ....
2. Camels live longer .... horses.
3. Parrots are .... than spiders.
4. How big .... they?
5. Bears have ....

7 Rearrange the following to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. are – very – Snakes – dangerous.

- -

2. are – perfect – Camels – desert – for – the.

- -

3. help – us – They – carry – to – things.

- -

4. fur – thick – warm – The fox's – keeps – it.

- -

8 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

camels - beautiful - carry - milk - fur

- -

- -

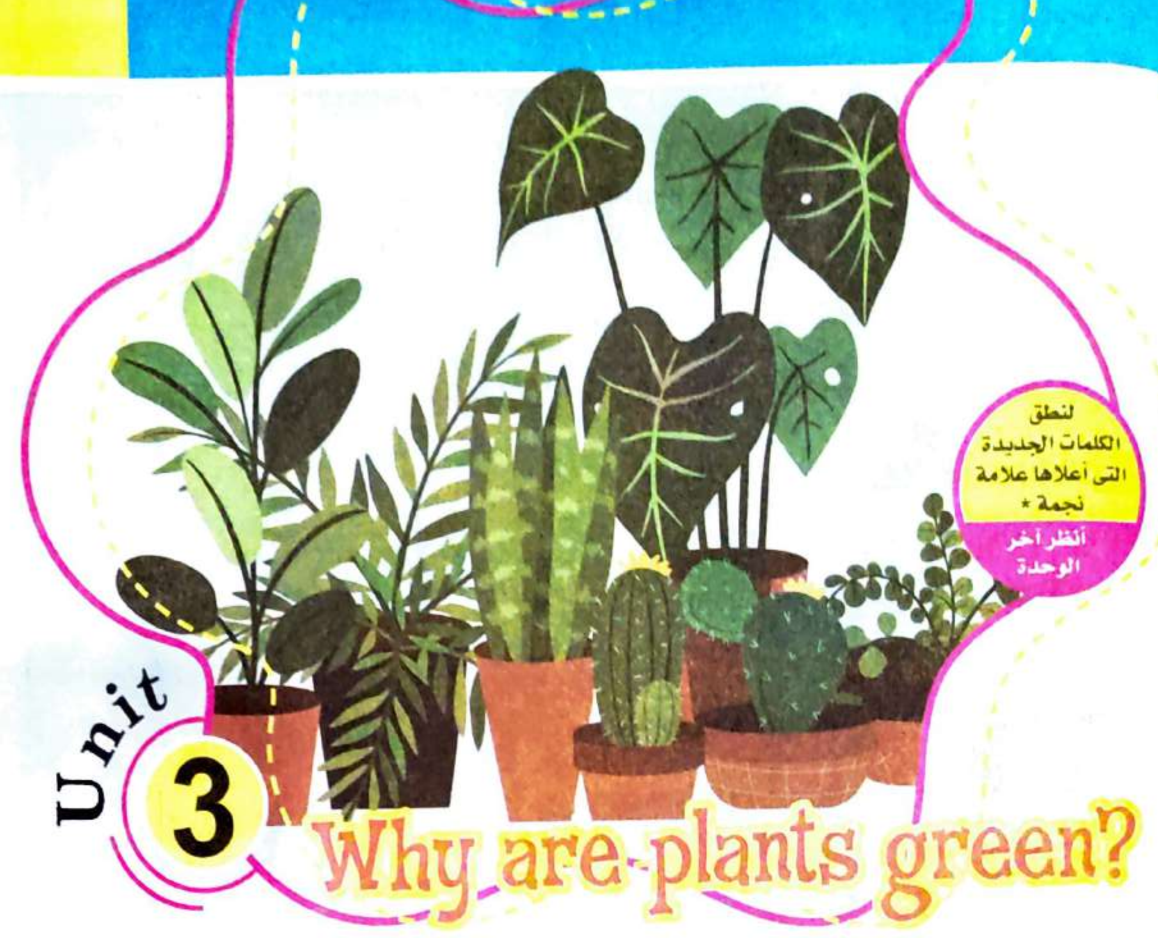
- -

- -

- -

Theme 1

I discover myself



Unit 3 Why are plants green?

لماذا النباتات خضراء؟

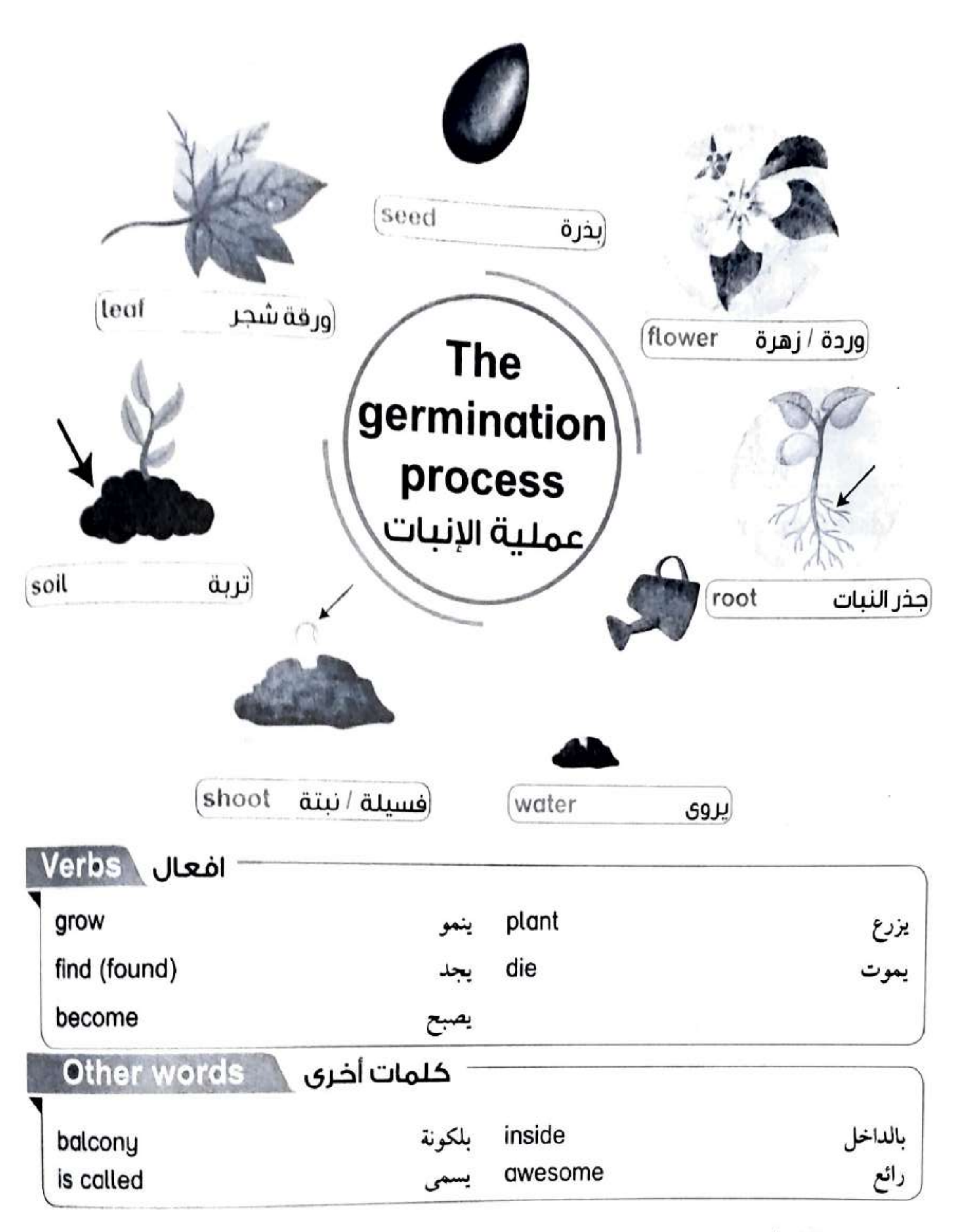
Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about plants and how they help us.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن النباتات وكيف يساعدونا.
2. Practice making sentences with the superlative.
   - يتدرب الطالب على تكوين جمل بإستخدام صيغة التفضيل العليا.
3. Read, listen to, and understand a short story.
   - يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى ويفهم قصة قصيرة.
4. Learn about and say words with the consonant blends /sl/ and /sw/.
   - يتعلم الطالب ويقول كلمات بها الاصوات الساكنة /sl/ و /sw/.
5. Write the life stages of a sunflower.
   - يكتب الطالب مراحل عمر زهرة عباد الشمس.
6. Research and write a report.
   - يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ويكتب تقرير .

Lesson 1

★ Plants and seeds

Vocabulary



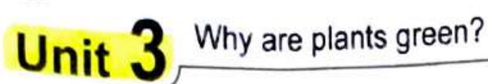
Verbs افعال

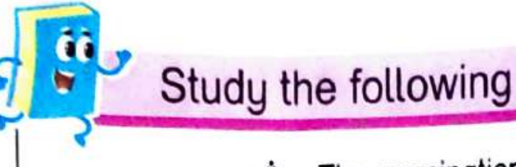
grow	ينمو	plant	يزرع
find (found)	يجد	die	يموت
become	يصبح		

Other words كلمات أخرى

balcony	بلكونة	inside	بالداخل
is called	يسمى	awesome	رائع

Help your child learn about the germination process. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن عملية الانبات.

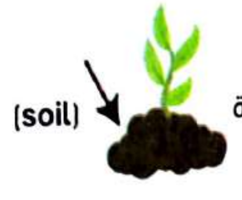




Study the following

نحن ندرس في هذا الدرس عملية الانبات The germination process حيث :





1) نضع البذور (seeds) في التربة (soil)

2) قم بري (water) البذور.



3) تنمو البذور وتكون جذر (root).

4) يتطور الجذر إلى ساق (stem).

5) ينمو على الساق اوراق الشجر (leaves).

6) تتحول أوراق الشجر إلى زهرة (flower) ثم تكون الزهرة النبات.

1 Listen and read: استمع واقرأ:



Dad : Come and look!

Seleem : What is it, Dad?

Dad : Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony! Look, can you see the leaves and the flowers?

Seleem : Oh yes, but why are the tomatoes green?

Dad : Tomatoes are green before they are red.

Seleem : How do we grow new tomatoes?

Dad : Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

Seleem : That's awesome! And I found a red tomato! Let's have it for lunch!

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

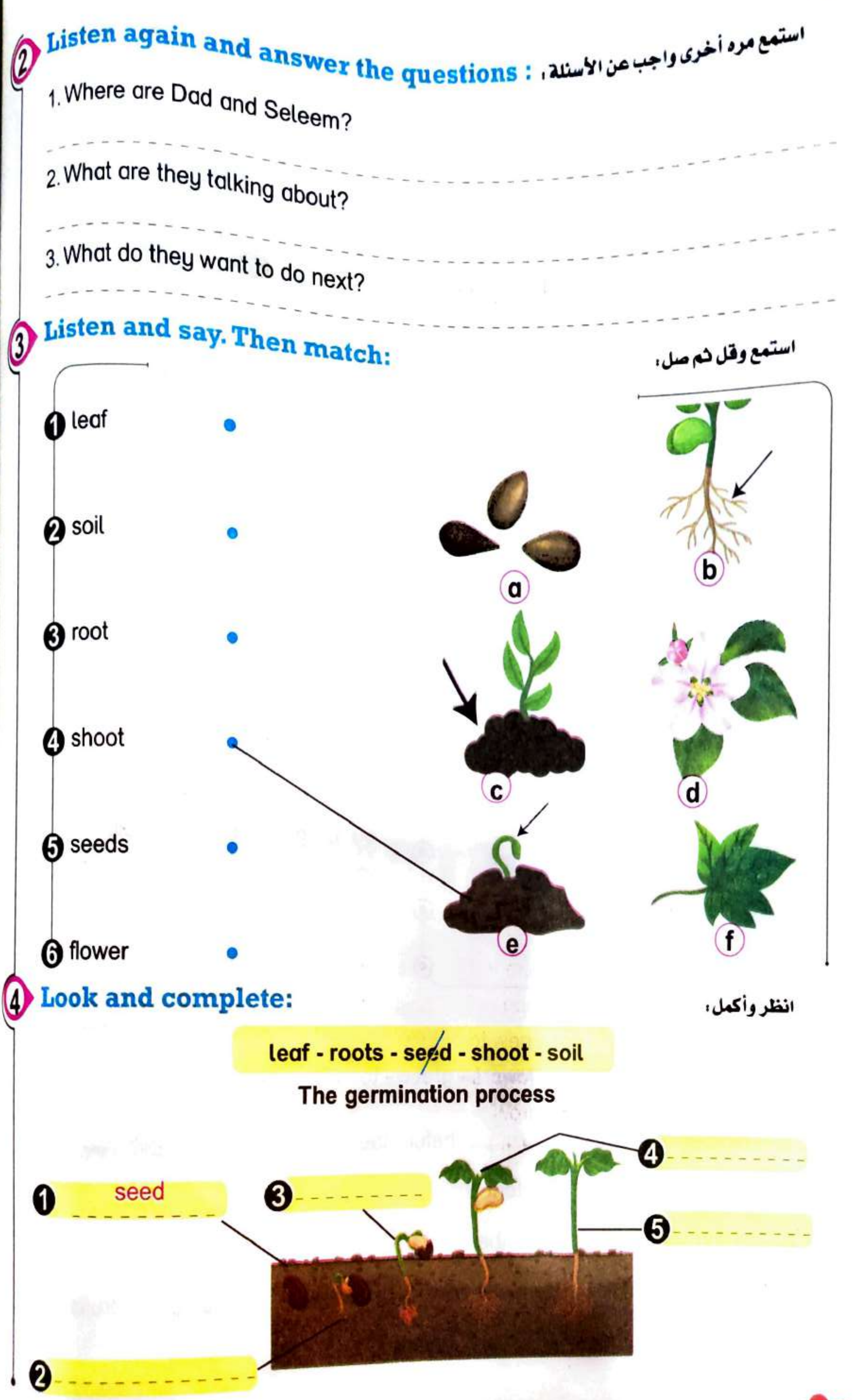
2 Listen again and answer the questions : استمع مره أخرى واجب عن الأسئلة :

1. Where are Dad and Seleem?

2. What are they talking about?

3. What do they want to do next?

3 Listen and say. Then match: استمع وقل ثم صل :



4 Look and complete: انظر وأكمل :

leaf - roots - seed - shoot - soil

The germination process

Activities



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(lunch - leaves - green - red)

Dad : Come and look!

Ayman : What is it, Dad?

Dad : Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony. Can you see the ❶ .... ?

Ayman : Oh yes, but why are the tomatoes ❷ .... ?

Dad : Tomatoes are green before they are ❸ ....

Ayman : I found a red tomato! Let's have it for ❹ .... !

2 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Tomatoes have	a. the plant every day.
2 We water	b. grow under the soil.
3 The roots	c. tomato fruits.
4 The flowers become	d. grow?
	e. seeds inside.

3 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

grows - flowers - green - tomato - seeds

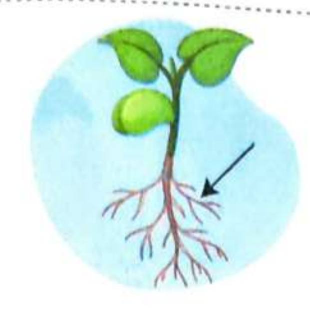
1. Tomatoes are .... before they are red.
2. We plant a seed and the plant ....
3. Can you see the leaves and the .... ?
4. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become .... fruits.
5. Tomatoes have .... inside.

4 Complete the sentences: أكمل الجمل:





1. We put seeds in the ....
2. It is a ....





3. The .... grows under the soil.
4. This is a ....

5 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. tomatoes - **How** - we - do - grow - new?

----

2. the plant - **We** - every - water - day.

----

3. tomato - **The** - become - fruits - flowers.

----

4. grow - **The roots** - soil - the - under.

Lesson 2

★ Plants in Egypt

Vocabulary


lotus flower زهرة اللوتس


tamarisk نبات الاثل


bean plant نبات الفول




reed نبات القصب(البوص)



Plants
نباتات


acacia* شجرة السنط


daisy* زهرة الاقحوان


sunflower عباد الشمس


rose وردة


orange tree
شجرة البرتقال


rivers and lakes انهار وبحيرات

Plant habitats
بيئة أو موطن النباتات


agricultural* habitat
بيئة زراعية


desert habitat
بيئة صحراوية

Help your child learn about plant habitats. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن موطن النباتات.

Other words كلمات أخرى

maize	ذرة	eggplant	ثمرة باذنجان
bettle	خنفساء	butterfly	فراشة
suitcase	حقيبة سفر		

Grammar قواعد لغوية



- درسنا في الوحدة السابقة المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين.
- ندرس في هذا الدرس المقارنة بين شخص و مجموعة أشخاص أو شئ ومجموعة اشياء أو حيوان ومجموعة حيوانات.

1 الصفات القصيرة

- اذا كانت الصفة قصيرة نضع قبلها (the) وفي آخرها (est).

الاسم + the + صفة قصيرة + est

- The sunflower is the biggest flower.
- Ahmed is tall. Fatma is taller than Ahmed. Marwa is taller than Fatma.
- Marwa is the tallest.

2 الصفات الطويلة

الاسم + the most الاكثر/ the least الاقل + صفة طويلة.

- The rose is the most beautiful flower.
- The sunflower is the least beautiful flower.



اذا انتهت الصفة بـ y + حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (iest):

heavy → heaviest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن عند إضافة (est):

big → biggest thin → thinnest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضيف (st) فقط:

nice → nicest

Help your child learn about superlative adjectives. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم مقارنة الصفات العليا.

Unit 3 Why are plants green?

صفات قصيرة	صفات طويلة
tall	beautiful
big	perfect
nice	delicious

ندرس فى هذا الدرس الأماكن التى تنمو بها النباتات وما نوع النباتات التى تنمو فى كل منطقة

River or lake نهر أو بحيرة		Agricultural بيئة زراعية		Desert صحراء	
1- lotus flower	زهرة اللوتس	1- bean plant	نبات الفول	1- tamarisk	نبات الأثل
2- reed	نبات البوص	2- orange tree	شجرة البرتقال	2- acacia	شجرة السنط

1 Read about plant habitats and label the photos :

اقرأ عن موطن النباتات وضع اسم كل موطن للنباتات تحت الصورة المناسبة :

1

....

2

....

3

....

Agricultural habitat
Farmers work here. They grow food for us to eat.

Rivers and lakes
Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.

Desert habitat
There is not much rain here. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

2 Where do these plants live? Complete the table:

أين تعيش هذه النباتات؟ اكمل الجدول :













River or lake	Agricultural	Desert
1- lotus flower	3-	5- ....
2-	4-	6- ....

3 Look and say : انظر وقل :

Compare the daisy and the rose
Compare the rose and the sunflower

tall - beautiful - colorful

The rose is taller than the daisy. The daisy is more colorful than the rose.



4 Look at the fact file and read the differences between the flowers:

انظر الى ملف الحقائق واقرأ الفروق بين الزهور :

	daisy	rose	sunflower
How big is the flower?	2.5 - 5 cm	about 6 cm	7.5 - 15 cm
How tall is it?	10 cm	60 cm	1 - 3.5 m
How long does it live?	around 6 days	around 10 days	around 2 weeks
How heavy is it?	around 20 g	around 50 g	around 200 g

5 Read and answer T (True) or F (False): اقرأ واجب بنعم او لا :

	True	False
1 The rose is smaller than the daisy.		
2 The sunflower is taller than the daisy.		
3 The sunflower is the biggest flower.		
4 The rose lives the longest.		
5 The daisy is the heaviest.		

6 Complete the table: أكمل الجدول:

1-	taller	the tallest
big	2-	3- ....
heavy	4-	the heaviest
5-	6-	the most beautiful

7 Write sentences to compare these plants and animals :

اكتب الجمل باستخدام صيغة المقارنة للنباتات والحيوانات (استخدم صيغة المقارنة والتفضيل كما فى المثال):

1. (cat / snake / fox / scary)

A fox is scarier than a cat. A snake is scarier than a fox. A snake is the scariest animal.

2. (maize / bean / eggplant / delicious)

- -

- -

3. (grape / orange / lemon / big)

- -

- -

4. (bee / beetle / butterfly / beautiful)

- -

- -

Activities



1 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A

1. Plants near rivers
2. Farmers grow
3. The daisy is
4. The sunflower

B

a. the heaviest.
b. is beautiful.
c. need a lot of water.
d. is scarier.
e. food for us to eat.

2 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The rose is .... than the daisy.
   a small   b smallest   c smaller
2. My cat is the .... on our street.
   a big   b bigger   c biggest
3. Ali is taller .... Nabil.
   a the   b than   c they
4. A reed is the .... plant.
   a tall   b taller   c tallest
5. My city is the .... place to live.
   a nice   b nicest   c nicer
6. I think a rose is the .... beautiful flower.
   a more   b less   c least
7. A snake is .... than a fox.
   a scarier   b scary   c the scariest
8. I think the eggplant is the .... plant.
   a more delicious   b most delicious   c less delicious
9. A lemon is .... an orange.
   a smaller than   b the smallest   c small
10. A lion is the .... animal.
   a strong   b strongest   c stronger

Help your child deal with such questions.   ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and complete: اقرأ وأكمل:

heavy - Farmers - water - rivers - heaviest

1. Plants in the desert do not need a lot of ....
2. .... work on the farm.
3. I have the .... suitcase.
4. Plants near .... need lots of water.
5. A: How .... is the sunflower? B: Around 200 g.

4 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. grow - for - Farmers - food - us.

....

2. in - isn't - much - There - rain - the desert.

....

3. scarier - than - A fox - a cat - is.

....

4. Some - a lot of - need - water - plants.

....

5 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

sunflower - beautiful - faces - grow - useful

مجاب عنه في نهاية الوحدة:

....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3

★ CLIL: Science

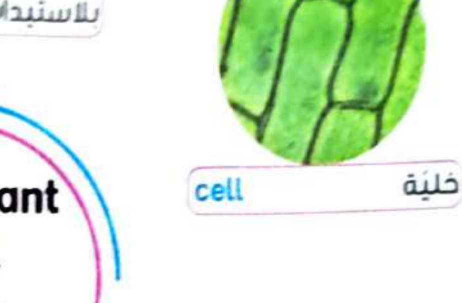




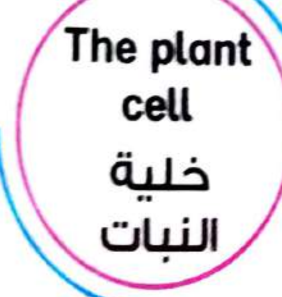
chloroplasts بلاستيدات



pollen حبوب اللقاح



cell خليّة





coconut
ثمرة جوز الهند



microscope
ميكروسكوب



carbon dioxide
ثاني أكسيد الكربون



oxygen
اكسجين

Verbs افعال

produce	ينتج	use	يستخدم
stick	يلتصق بـ	float	يطفو
breathe	يتنفس	travel away	يسافر بعيدًا

Help your child learn about the plant cell. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن خلية النبات.

Unit 3 Why are plants green?

Other words كلمات أخرى

light	خفيف	million	مليون
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	pipe	ماسورة
tank	خزان	air pollution	تلوث الهواء
factory	مصنع	wind	رياح

Definitions تعريفات

polluted	ملوث	dirty from factories and cars
oxygen	اكسجين	a gas in the air that people need to breathe
carbon dioxide	ثانى اكسيد الكربون	a gas in the air that green plants use to make their food



Study the following

ندرس فى هذا الدرس البذور وحركتها حيث تحتاج البذور مكان لتنمو فيه.

ينتج النبات حبوب اللقاح فى الزهرة وتستخدم الزهرة حبوب اللقاح لانتاج بذور جديدة.

A How do seeds move to new places? كيف تنتقل البذور إلى أماكن جديدة؟

1. **Light seeds can move in the wind. (dandelion)**

   الحبوب الخفيفة تنتقل فى الرياح. (مثل نبات الهندباء)

2. **Some seeds can stick to an animal's fur.(cockleburs)**

   بعض البذور تلتصق بفرو الحيوانات. (مثل نبات الشبيط)

3. **Other seeds can float on water. (coconut)**

   البذور الآخرى يمكن أن تطفوا على الماء. (مثل جوز الهند)

B Why do seeds move to new places? لماذا تنتقل البذور لاماكن جديدة؟

To find a new place to grow. لتجد مكان جديد لتنمو.

C Plant cells نتعلم ايضا عن خلايا النبات

1. A plant is made of millions of cells.

يتكون النبات من ملايين الخلايا.

2. Chloroplasts make the plant green.

تجعل البلاستيدات النبات اخضر اللون.

3. The green plant cells make food for the plant.

تقوم الخلية الخضراء فى النبات بعمل الغذاء للنبات.

4. They use sunlight, carbon dioxide and water.

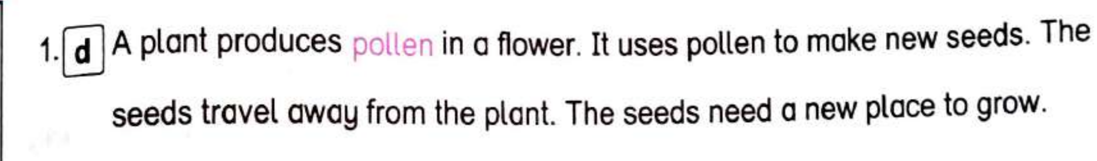
تستخدم خلايا النبات ضوء الشمس وثانى اكسيد الكربون والماء.

D The importance of plants أهمية النباتات

- Some plants can clean air. بعض النباتات تنظف الهواء.
- Green plants take carbon dioxide from the air. The plants produce oxygen.

تأخذ النباتات الخضراء ثانى أكسيد الكربون من الهواء وتنتج النباتات الاكسچين.

1 Read and number: اقرأ ورقم (كالمثال):



1. d A plant produces pollen in a flower. It uses pollen to make new seeds. The seeds travel away from the plant. The seeds need a new place to grow.

2. ☐ Some seeds can move in the wind. These seeds are very light.

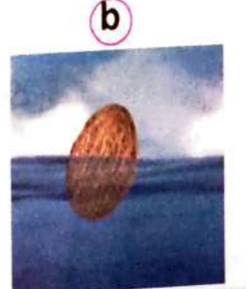
1. ☐ Some seeds can stick to an animal's fur. The animals move and take the seeds with them.

1. ☐ Other seeds can float on water to find a new place to grow. These seeds are usually big and light.

a



b



c



d



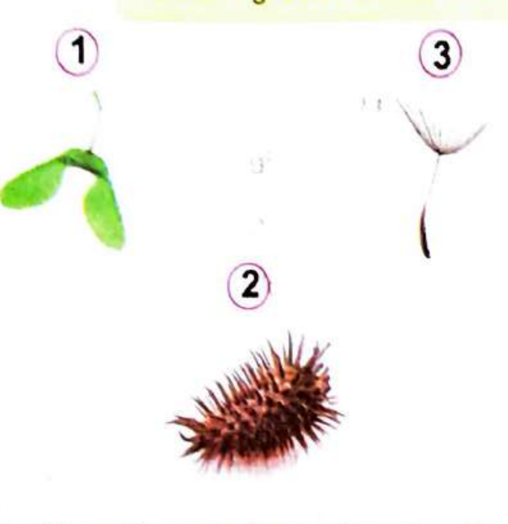
Help your child read and number. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويرقم.

2 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions. اعمل في ثنائيات. ناقش هذه الأسئلة.

1. How do seeds move to new places? كيف تنتقل البذور إلى أماكن جديدة؟
   - Some seeds stick .... other seeds float ....
2. Why do seeds move to new places? لماذا تنتقل البذور إلى أماكن جديدة؟
   - To find ....

3 Look and circle: انظر وضع دائرة:

Circle in blue: seeds which travel by air
Circle in red: seeds which travel on animals
Circle in green : seeds which travel by water



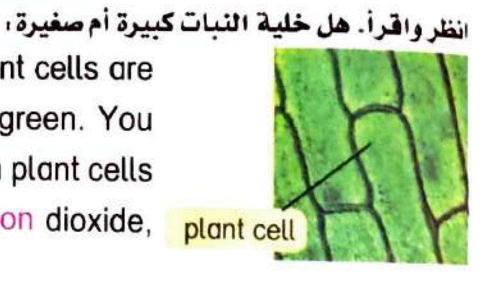




4 Look and read. Is a plant cell big or small?

انظر واقرأ. هل خلية النبات كبيرة أم صغيرة؟

A plant is made of millions of cells. The plant cells are very, very small. Chloroplasts make the plant green. You can only see them with a microscope. The green plant cells make food for the plant. They use sunlight, carbon dioxide, and water.



5 Read the text again. Choose a or b: اقرأ النص مرة أخرى. واختره a أو b:

1. What makes the plant green?
   a chloroplasts b sunlight
2. When does the plant make its food?
   a during the day b at night
3. What does the plant use to make its food?
   a carbon dioxide and oxygen.
   b carbon dioxide, sunlight and water.

Help your child learn about the plant cell. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن خلية النبات.

6 Look, ask, and answer: انظر واسأل واجب:



1. Look at the photo, what can you see?

2. Why do people grow plants near their homes?

3. Do you have plants in your home? Why?

7 Read and listen to the text. How do plants make the air clean?: اقرأ واستمع الى النص، كيف تجعل النباتات الهواء نظيف؟

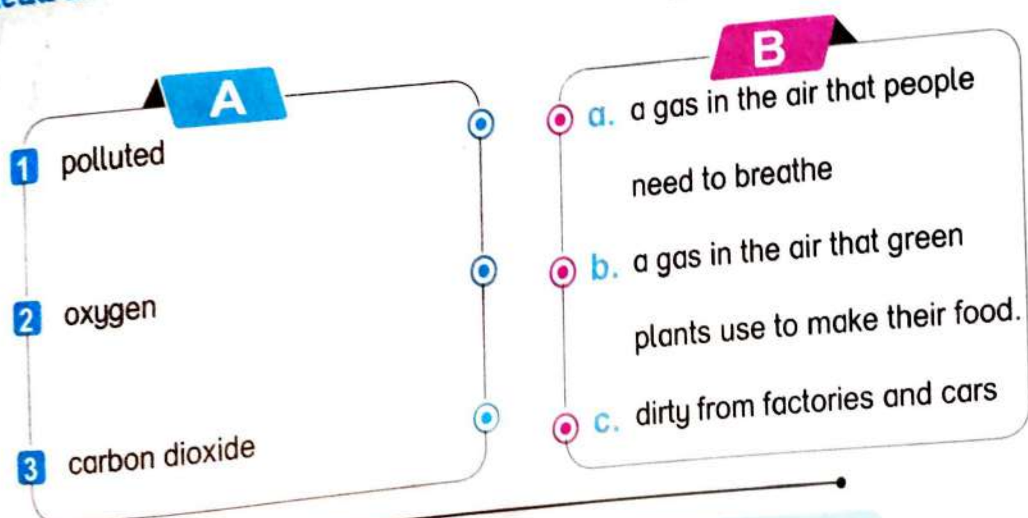
How plants clean air

People need oxygen so we can breathe. In our cities, the air is polluted because of factories and cars. There is a lot of carbon dioxide in the air.

Green plants take carbon dioxide from the air. The plant cells need carbon dioxide to make food for the plant. The plants also make oxygen. Plants in our houses and parks give us oxygen to breathe.

In some cities, like Paris and Milan, people are growing plants on apartment buildings. These plants keep the buildings cool and help with air pollution. The people who live in the buildings can breathe cleaner air.

8 Read the text again. Match the words with the definitions: اقرأ النص مرة اخرى ثم صل التعريفات:



A	B
1 polluted	a. a gas in the air that people need to breathe
2 oxygen	b. a gas in the air that green plants use to make their food.
3 carbon dioxide	c. dirty from factories and cars

Help your child read and match the definitions. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل التعريفات.

Activities



1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Some seeds can stick	a. on water.
2 Other seeds can float	b. in the wind.
3 Some seeds can move	c. make the plant yellow.
4 Chloroplasts	d. to an animal's fur.
	e. make the plant green.

2 Read and complete: اقرأ و أكمل:

water - wind - carbon dioxide - oxygen - microscope

1. People need .... so we can breathe.
2. Green plants take .... from the air.
3. You can see plant cells with a ....
4. Plants use sunlight, carbon dioxide and .... to make food.
5. Very light seeds can move in the ....

3 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. carbon dioxide - take - air - Green plants - from - the.

- -

2. plants - the - Chloroplasts - make - green. - - - - - - - - - - - -

3. can - Some - float - seeds - water - on.

- -

4. cells - is - made - of - A plant - millions of.

- -

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. A plant is made of millions of

a fur b cells c animal

2. A plant takes carbon dioxide and produces

a water b oxygen c soil

3. .... make the plant green.

a Food b Air c Chloroplasts

4. The green plant cells use .... to make food for the plant.

a pollen b air c sunlight

5. A plant produces .... in a flower to make new seeds.

a sunlight b pollen c leaves

5 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الاتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

People need oxygen so we can breathe. In big cities, the air is polluted because of factories and cars. There is a lot of carbon dioxide in the air. In some cities, like Paris and Milan, people are growing plants on apartment buildings. These plants keep the buildings cool and help with air pollution. The people who live in the building can breathe cleaner air.

A- Answer the following questions:

1- What do people need to breathe?

....

2- Why do people grow plants near their homes?

....

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 In big cities the air is clean.		
4 The plants help with air pollution.		

Lesson 4

★ A short story - Math & Pronunciation





Verbs افعال

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
grow	يزرع	grew	decide	يقرر	decided
live	يعيش	lived	plant	يزرع	planted

Other words كلمات أخرى

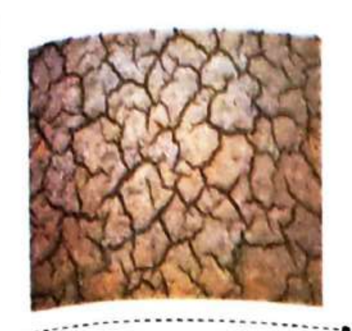
the United States	الولايات المتحدة	grandparents	اجداد
polluted air	هواء ملوث	life	الحياه
work hard	يعمل بجد	proud of	فخور بـ
on the farm	فى المزرعة		

Describe a story صف القصة

boring	ممل	OK	جيد
interesting	شيق	I don't understand.	لم افهم.

Help your child read a short story. **ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة قصيرة.**

1 Look at the photos. What can you see? What do you think the story is about?: انظر الى الصور. ماذا ترى؟ وفى رأيك ما الموضوع الذى تدور حوله لقصة :

1

2

3


2 Read and listen. Who is Lucas?: استمع واقرأ :

Lucas and his farm

Lucas lives on a farm in the United States. It is a very special farm. Forty years ago, the land was very dry. There was no farm. No one wanted to live there.

Lucas's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They didn't like the polluted air and the noise. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land.

At first, life was very difficult. They worked very hard and they planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They needed about a billion liters of water a year.

They grew many fruits like oranges and lemons. They brought animals to the land. They planted trees and flowers.

Today, Lucas lives on the farm with his mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good life. They are very proud of Lucas's grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.

3 Work with a partner. Answer the questions: اعمل مع زميلك واجب عن الأسئلة :

1. Why did Lucas's grandparents plant seeds? - لماذا زرع اجداد لوكس بذور؟

----

2. How did Lucas's grandparents change the land? - لماذا غير اجداد لوكس الأرض؟

----

3. Why do you think Lucas likes the farm? - لماذا فى رأيك يحب لوكس المزرعة؟

----

4 Do you like the story? Explain your answer:

هل أعجبتك القصة؟ فسر إجابتك:

boring - OK - interesting - I don't understand

The story is interesting because ______________________________

____

____

____

____

____

CLIL: MATH

تعرف على الارقام حتى المليار

100	1,000	10,000	100,000
a hundred مائة	a thousand الف	ten thousand عشرة الاف	a hundred thousand مائة الف

1,000,000	100,000,000	1,000,000,000
a million مليون	a hundred million مائة مليون	billion مليار





ones آحاد	tens عشرات	hundreds مئات
thousands ألوف	ten thousands عشرات الآلوف	hundred thousands مئات الآلوف

millions ملايين	ten millions عشرات الملايين	hundred millions مئات الملايين	billions مليارات



A billion is a thousand million. المليار يساوى ألف مليون.

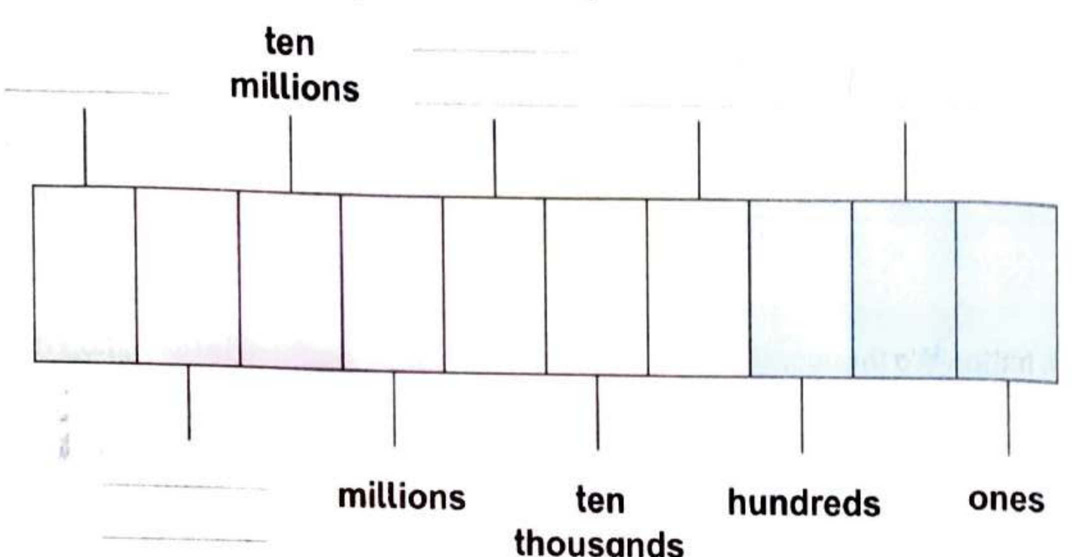
- ندرس فى هذا الدرس القيمة المكانية للأعداد. حيث هناك فرق بين قيمة العدد والقيمة المكانية.
- فمثلًا الرقم (9) قيمته المكانية هى الآحاد و(150) القيمة المكانية هى المئات.
- ادرس الآتى:

ones آحاد	⟶	[1-9]
tens عشرات	⟶	[10-99]
hundreds مئات	⟶	[100-999]
thousands آلوف	⟶	[1000-9,999]
ten thousands عشرات الآلوف	⟶	[10,000-99,999]
hundred thousands مئات الآلوف	⟶	[100,000-999,999]
millions الملايين	⟶	[1,000,000-9,999,999]
ten millions عشرات الملايين	⟶	[10,000,000-99,999,999]
hundred millions مئات الملايين	⟶	[100,000,000-999,999,999]
billions مليارات	⟶	[1,000,000,000]

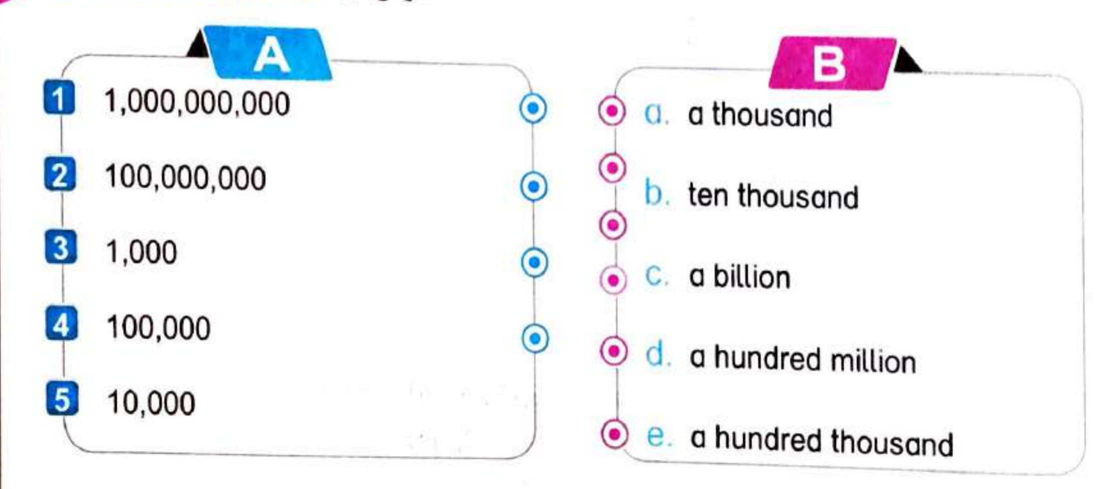
1 Look and label the diagram with the correct numbers:

انظر وضع الكلمات فى المكان الصحيح:

billions - hundred millions - hundred thousands - tens - thousands



2 Read and match اقرأ وصل:







★ **Listen and say:** استمع وقل





لاحظ! لاحظ نستخدم اللاحقة (ful) آخر كثير من الصفات لتعنى (مليء بـ):

Noun اسم		Adjective صفة	
color	لون	colorful	زاهي / كثير الألوان
beauty	جمال	beautiful	جميل
care	يعتني بـ	careful	حريص
help	يساعد	helpful	متعاون
use	يستخدم	useful	مفيد



Unit 3 Why are plants green?



1 Match: صل:

swim | slice | swan | slippers

1 2 3 4

5 6 7 8

sweets | sweep | sleep | switch

2 We use the suffix -ful at the end of many adjectives. It means full of. Find the words in the box. Check the meaning of the words in a dictionary:

beautiful
careful
colorful
helpful
useful

s	l	i	h	e	p	y	u	c	m
c	a	r	e	f	u	l	i	o	w
e	s	t	l	r	g	b	w	l	h
d	w	s	p	a	n	r	t	o	t
u	s	e	f	u	l	d	u	r	d
e	h	i	u	s	w	i	t	f	h
u	p	m	l	n	g	e	o	u	b
b	e	a	u	t	i	f	u	l	e

Activities



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

(fruits - millions - farm - dry)

Yasin : Where do you live?

Lucas : I live on a ❶ .... in the United States.

Yasin : How was the land in the past?

Lucas : It was very ❷ ....

Yasin : Who planted the farm?

Lucas : My grandparernts planted ❸ .... of seeds.

Yasin : What did they grow?

Lucas : They grew many ❹ .... like oranges and lemons.

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 A billion is a	a. liters of water to water the farm.
2 They needed a billion	b. thousand million.
3 A million is a	c. of my grandparents.
4 I'm very proud	d. hundred thousand.
	b. thousand thousand.

3 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. planted - seeds - They - of - millions.

....

2. rainwater - They - to - the seeds - used - water.

....

3. lives - a farm - He - in - Egypt - on.

....

4. land - was - The - very - dry.

....



4 Complete the sentences:



أكمل الجمل:





1. This is a ....



2. I want a .... of pizza.





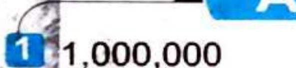
3. They are my ....
4. I want some ....



5 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 1,000,000	a. a billion
2 1,000,000,000	b. a million
3 1,000	c. ten thousand
4 10,000	d. a thousand
5 100,000	e. a hundred thousand



6 Read and complete:

اقرأ و أكمل:

swim - proud - million - fruits - thousand

1. A billion is a .... million.
2. I'm very .... of my grandfather.
3. .... is a 1,000,000 .
4. I can .... in the sea.
5. Farmers grow many .... like oranges and lemons .



★ Life stages of a sunflower



Vocabulary



root جذر



seed بذرة



soil تربة



shoot نبتة



sunflower
عباد الشمس



sunlight
ضوء الشمس



process
عملية



papyrus
البردى



Nile Delta
دلتا النيل



paper
ورق



basket
سلة



sandals
صندل



leaves
ورق الشجر

Verbs افعال

put	يضع	start	يبدأ
face	يواجه	drop	يلقى / يرمى
greminate	ينبت	die	يموت

Help your child learn about the life stages of a sunflower.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن مراحل حياة زهرة عباد الشمس.

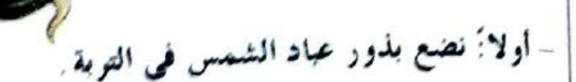
Study the following

1 ندرس فى هذا الدرس مراحل نمو زهرة عباد الشمس والكلمات المستخدمة فى ترتيب عملية ما من البداية للنهاية:

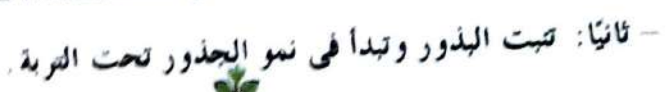
First → Next → After that → Finally

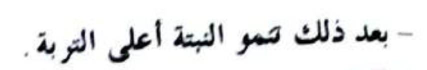
أولاً — التالى — بعد ذلك — أخيراً

- First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil.


- أولاً: نضع بذور عباد الشمس فى التربة.

- Next, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.


- ثانيًا: تنبت البذور وتبدأ فى نمو الجذور تحت التربة.


- بعد ذلك تنمو النبتة أعلى التربة.

- After that, the shoot grows above the soil.

- After, about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.
- بعد أربعة اشهر تتفتح زهرة عباد الشمس وتواجه الشمس.

- Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds.
- أخيرًا تموت زهرة عباد الشمس وتسقط بذورها.



2 ندرس ايضا معلومات عن أهمية نبات مصرى وهو البردى:

- Why was papyrus an important plant?
- Because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper.
- They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus.
- Papyrus can help to clean water.



- Where does it live?
- Near the Nile.
- What does the plant need?
- Water, air, soil and sunlight.

1 Look and order the life stages of a sunflower

انظر ورتب حياة زهرة عباد الشمس:

a b c

d e f

1

2 Complete the sentences about the life stages of a sunflower with the words in the box:

اكمل الجمل عن دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس بكلمات من الصندوق:

After - After that - Finally - First - Next

1. First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. You put it in sunlight and water it.
2. ...., the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.
3. ...., the shoot grows above the soil. It grows leaves. It gets taller.
4. ....,about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.
5. ...., the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

3 Listen and complete the life stages of a tomato:

استمع واكمل دورة حياة ثمرة الطماطم:

1. First, you ....
2. ...., the seed germinates, and it starts to grow roots under the soil.
3. After that, the shoot .... It grows taller.
4. Finally, the ....
5. ...., a few weeks, the tomato plant .... The process begins again.



4 **Work in groups. Think and research** اعمل في مجموعات. فكر وابحث

A report about a plant

اقرأ التقرير ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Find an Egyptian plant.

1. Why is it an important plant?

2. What does the plant need?

3. Where does it live?

Papyrus

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus.



Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.



Activities



1 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:



1. Papyrus is
2. Egyptians used papyrus
3. Papyrus need
4. Papyrus grows



a. in the Nile Delta.
b. a very special plant.
c. to make food.
d. a lot of water.
e. to make paper.



2 Complete the sentences:

أكمل الجمل:

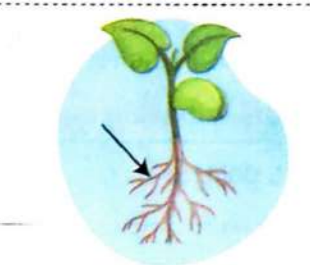


1. It's a ....



2. Plant the  .... in soil.

3. It grows ....



4. The seed starts to grow .... under the soil.

3 Rearrange the following to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. put - the seed - You - sunlight - in.

- -

2. opens - and - The sunflower - faces - the sun.

- -

3. special- Papyrus - plant - is - a very.

4. papyrus - paper - Ancient Egyptians - to make - used.

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The sunflower dies and drops its ....
   a seeds b soil c roots
2. Ancient Egyptians made .... and baskets from papyrus.
   a sandals b cars c trains
3. The plant needs water, soil and ....
   a fire b sunlight c salt
4. The shoot grows above the ....
   a sky b soil c sun
5. They used papyrus to make ....
   a metal b paper c plastic

5 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Papyrus is a very special plant that grows in the Nile Delta. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

A- Answer the following questions:

1- What is papyrus?

....

2- Where does it live?

....

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper.		
4 The Ancient Egyptians made bikes from papyrus.		

Review



The germination process عملية الانبات






leaf ورقة شجر | seed بذرة | flower وردة | soil تربة






root جذر النبات | tomato ثمرة طماطم | water يروى | shoot فسيلة / نبتة




Plants نباتات






lotus flower زهرة اللوتس | tamarisk نبات الاثل | bean plant نبات الفول | reed نبات القصب | acacia شجرة السنط

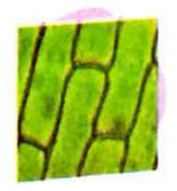





daisy زهرة الاقحوان | sunflower عباد الشمس | rose وردة | orange tree شجرة البرتقال

The plant cell خلية النبات









pollen حبوب لقاح | chloroplasts بلاستيدات | cell خليه | microscope ميكروسكوب | carbon dioxide ثاني أكسيد الكربون | oxygen اكسجين



A short story قصة قصيرة

noise	farm	land	liter	rainwater	dry
ضوضاء	مزرعة	ارض	لتر	مياه الامطار	جاف

Math الرياضيات

100	1,000	10,000	100,000
a hundred	a thousand	ten thousand	a hundred thousand
مائة	الف	عشرة الاف	مائة الف

1,000,000	100,000,000	1,000,000,000
a million مليون	a hundred million مائة مليون	billion مليار

Pronunication

/sw/

swim يعوم	swan بجعة	sweets حلوى	sweep يكنس	switch مفتاح الكهرباء

/sl/





slice شريحة	slippers شبشب	sleep ينام

Lessons 5&6

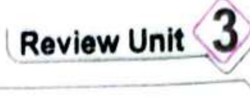




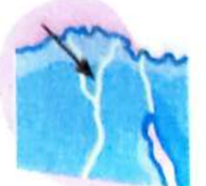




root جذر	seed بذرة	basket سلة	soil تربة




shoot
نبتة


Nile Delta
دلتا النيل


paper
ورق


sandals
صندل


papyrus
البردى


leaves
ورق الشجر


sunflower
عباد الشمس


sunlight
ضوء الشمس


process
عملية

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Superlative Adjectives صيغة التفضيل العليا للصفات

◉ ندرس فى هذا الدرس المقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة اشخاص أو شئ ومجموعة اشياء أو حيوان ومجموعة حيوانات.

1 الصفات القصيرة

الاسم + the + صفة صغيرة + est

- The elephant is the biggest animal on land.

2 الصفات الطويلة

الاسم + the most / least + صفة طويلة

- The parrot is the most beautiful bird.
- The snake is the most dangerous animal.


! لاحظ

اذا انتهت الصفة بـ y + حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضع (iest):

heavy ⟶ heaviest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن عند اضافة (est):

big ⟶ biggest   thin ⟶ thinnest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضيف (st) فقط:

nice ⟶ nicest



ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات

١ لنطق كلمة (balcony) بشكل صحيح انطق حرفي (a) كما ينطق في كلمة (man) وانطق حرف (o) كما ينطق في كلمة (second).

٢ لنطق كلمة (awesome) انطق الحروف (awe) مثل نطق حرفي (oo) في كلمة (door) وانطق حرف (o) في (some) كما ينطق في كلمة (second) ولا تنطق حرف (e).

٣ لنطق كلمة (shoot) انطق حرفي (oo) كما ينطقان مثل كلمة (moon).

٤ في كلمة (agricultural) حرفي (tu) ينطقان مثل (تش) في اللغة العربية.

٥ لنطق كلمة (habitat) انطق حرفي (a) في اول واخر الكلمة كما ينطق في كلمة (man).

٦ كلمة (reed) تنطق مثل كلمة (seed) تمامًا.

٧ كلمة (acacia) ينطق حرف (a) الأول مثل (o) في كلمة (second) وحرف الـ (a) الثانى ينطق مثل حرف (a) في كلمة (make) والمقطع الصوتى (ci) ينطق مثل (ش) في اللغة العربية.

٨ لنطق كلمة (microscope) انطق حرفي (mi) مثل ضمير الملكية (my) وانطق حرف (o) الأول كما ينطق في كلمة (second) وانطق حرف (o) الثانى مثل نطق حرفي (oa) في كلمة (coat) وحرف (e) الأخير لا ينطق.

٩ كلمة (daisy) المقطع الصوتى (dai) مثل كلمة (day) وحرف (s) ينطق مثل (z).

١٠ في كلمة (chloroplast) انطق حرفي (ch) ينطقان مثل (k).

١١ كلمة (cell) حرف (c) ينطق مثل (s).

١٢ لنطق كلمة (pollution) انطق حرف (o) الاول كما ينطق في كلمة (second) وحرف (u) مثل نطق حرفي (oo) في (moon).

١٣ لنطق كلمة (billion) و (million) انطق حرف (i) الاول مثل نطقه في (bin) وحرف (i) الثانى مثل نطق (y) في (yes) و حرف (o) كما ينطق في (second).

١٤ في كلمة (papyrus) انطق حرفي (u/a) مثل نطق حرف (o) في (second) وانطق (py) مثل نطق (pie) تماماً.

Writing Skills

مهارات الكتابة

Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

sunflower - beautiful - faces - grow - useful



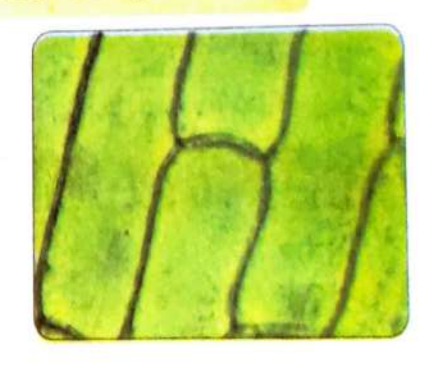
1. It's the sunflower. It's very beautiful. It faces the sun every day. Farmers grow it to take its seeds. The seeds of the sunflower are very useful.

tomato - seeds - grow - water - green



2. It's the tomato plant. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds to grow new tomatoes. We water the plant every day. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

cells - small - microscope - make food - sunlight



3. A plant is made of millions of cells. The plant cells are very small. You can only see them with a microscope. The green plant cells make food for the plant. They use sunlight, carbon dioxide and water.

Activity 3 on Unit (3)



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس

(faces - beautiful - this - leaves)

A : Look at this plant.

B : What is ❶ .... ?

A : It's a sunflower.

B : Oh! A sunflower. It's ❷ ....

A : It grows ❸ ....

B : I see. It opens and ❹ .... the sun.

2 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 1,000,000,000	a. need carbon dioxide.
2 Oxygen	b. grow food for us.
3 Plant cells	c. A billion.
4 Farmers	d. A gas in the air that people need to breathe.
	e. A million.

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The daisy is the .... beautiful flower.
   a more b most c less
2. My city is the .... place to live.
   a nice b nicer c nicest
3. I think a rose is .... most beautiful flower.
   a the b than c that
4. Plants can .... the air.
   a eat b play c clean
5. The plants produce ....
   a carbon dioxide b air c oxygen

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

4 Read and complete:

اقرأ و أكمل:

float - stick - seeds - most - pollen

1. Tomatoes have .... inside.
2. The sunflower is the .... beautiful plant.
3. A plant uses .... to make new seeds.
4. Some seeds .... on water.
5. Some seeds can .... to an animal's fur.

5 Complete the sentences:

أكمل الجمل:



1. It's a .... flower.



2. This is a ....



3. He can ....



4. This is a ....

6 Rearrange the following to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. land - was - The - very - dry.

- -

2. did - he - Why - seeds - plant?

- -

3. sunflower - faces - opens - The - the sun - and.

- -

4. made of - millions - A plant - is - of cells.

- -

7 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed lives on a farm near Benha. It's a very special farm. He grows a lot of plants there. He grows maize and gives it to the animals on the farm to feed them. Ahmed grows many fruits likes oranges and lemons. Ahmed has a good life. He is happy because he grows his food himself.

A- Answer the following questions:

1- Why is Ahmed happy?

2- What does Ahmed give to animals?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 Ahmed grows bananas and pears.		
4 Ahmed has a farm near Cairo.		

8 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

sunflower - beautiful - grow - useful - faces



Objectives of the Review 1 أهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1 Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 1 - 3.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجوده بالوحدات ١-٣.

Lesson 2 Phonics and Assessment

1. To revise the key letter sounds from Units 1-3.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ١-٣.

2. To evaluate progress in Units 1- 3.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ فى استيعاب الوحدات من ١ الى٣.

Lesson 3 Listening and speaking

1. To read a non- fiction text and answer questions.

- يقرأ التلميذ نص به معلومات حقيقية ويجيب عن الاسئلة.

2. To identify key words from the story.

- يتعرف التلميذ على الكلمات الاساسية فى القصة.

Review 1

★ Units 1 - 2 & 3

1 Listen and point: استمع وأشر :

Start



Finish

2 Look and write: أنظر وأكتب (كالمثال) :

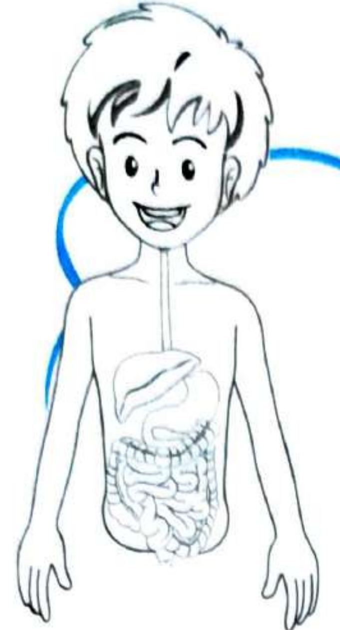
1. What's number 15?

- It's a camel.

2. What's number 9?

- It's a ....

3 Read and color the digestive system: اقرأ ولون الجهاز الهضمي :



Color the mouth red.

Color the esophagus orange.

Color the small intestine blue.

Color the large intestine green.

Color the stomach pink.

4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box :

أكمل الجمل باستخدام الكلمات التي في الاطار :

waste - gastric juice - small intestine - esophagus

1 - The .... goes from the mouth to the stomach.

2 - The .... digests food.

3 - From the stomach, food goes to the ....

4 - The large intestine removes ....

5 Point and say: اشر وقل :

- يشير الطالب لكل عضو في الجهاز الهضمي ويجيب الآخر كالمثال :

1. What's this?



2.- It's the mouth - it's the beginning of the digestive system.



Lesson 2

★ Units 1 - 2 & 3

1 **Look and complete with the words in the box:** انظر واكمل بكلمات من الاطار :

close - desert - drink - flat - fur - important - milk - sand - strong

I love camels. They are very ❶ .... animals in Egypt. They are ❷ .... and they can carry people and things across the ❸ .... They are tall animals, with thin legs. Their ❹ .... is delicious and we can use their ❺ .... to make clothes. Camels are good animals for the desert because they don't ❻ .... a lot of water. Their feet are ❼ .... so they can walk on sand in the desert. They can ❽ .... their noses and eyes to stop the ❾ .... from coming in.

2 **Think of another desert animal. Draw and write:**

فكر فى حيوان صحراوى آخر، ارسم واكتب :

I love .... They are ....

They ....

They ....

They are good animals for the desert because they ....

....

3 Look and write the words you see. Then match:

انظر واكتب الكلمات التي تراها ثم صل،

1- nose

2- c

3- m

4- s

5- s

6- s

7- p

8- b

4 Complete the sentences with verbs with 're':

اكمل الجمل بأفعال تبدأ ب (re)،

paint - make - clean - do



1. Today I need to redo my little brother's band-aid.



2. The kitchen was clean this morning but now I need to .... it.



3. I need to .... my garden table.



4. I burnt the pancakes - I have to .... them.

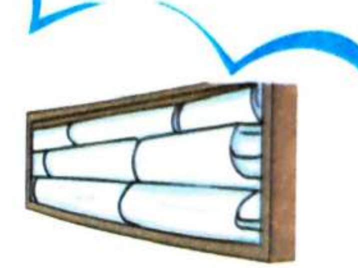
5 **Work in groups. Choose an important Egyptian plant. Find out about it:**

- Where can you find it?
- What does Egypt make from it?
- What does it need to live?
- Why is it important for Egypt?

Egypt's cotton

Egypt's cotton

Egypt is very famous for its cotton. It is probably the best cotton in the world. This is because the Egyptians grow it along the Nile, and the Nile soil is very rich in nutrients. The Egyptian climate مناخ is humid,that is wet. The sun shines almost every day. All These conditions are excellent for very good cotton.



Egyptian cotton towels

Egyptian cotton is special because its fibres are longer than other cottons. Egyptians make fantastic bedsheets and towels from the cotton,as well as other things. The cotton goes to countries all over the world,because many people love Egyptian cotton.

humidity: water vapor in the atmosphere

Lesson 3

★ Non-Fiction Reader

Where does chocolate come from?

Vocabulary المفردات

chocolate	شيكولاته	cacao tree	شجرة الكاكو
Mexico	المكسيك	Africa	افريقيا
Mexican people	الشعب المكسيكي	African people	الأفارقة
Spanish	اسبانى	sunshine	اشعة الشمس
Europe	اوربا	roast	يحمص
Pod	جراب شجرة الكاكو	oven	فرن
dry	يجفف	factory	مصنع
press	يضغط	bar of chocolate	قالب شيكولاته
seedlings	شتلات		

1 Work with a partner. Ask and answer: أسأل وأجب أنت وزميلك:

Do you like chocolate?

When do you eat it?

2 Read and listen to the text about chocolate:

اقرأ واستمع الى النص عن الشيكولاته:

Where does chocolate come from?

People in Mexico were the first to make chocolate about 1,000 years ago. Spanish people brought chocolate to Europe in the 1500s.Now people make chocolate all around the world. Do you know where chocolate comes from? It comes from the cacao tree. Today, most cacao comes from trees which grow in Africa. Farmers plant cacao seeds in the soil. The seeds need water and sunshine.



The plants grow taller. The fruits of the cacao tree are called pods. When the beans are ready, the farmers open them and dry them in the sun. The farmers roast the cacao beans in an oven. They take out the seeds.

The cacao seeds go to a factory. In the factory, the workers add sugar and milk. Then they press it down to make a bar of chocolate. Then it's yummy to eat!

Review 1

3 Read again and choose the correct answer,a or b:
اقرأ مرة أخرى ثم أختر الإجابة الصحيحة من a أو b.

1. Who first made chocolate?

   a Mexican people
   b African people.

2. Who brought chocolate to Europe?

   a African people
   b Spanish people.

3. Most chocolate today comes from ...

   a Mexico.
   b Africa.

4. To make chocolate, workers mix ...

   a cocoa seeds, milk, and sugar.
   b beans, fruit, and sugar.

4 Read and order: اقرأ ورتب،

a. [1] The farmer plants the cacao seed.

b. [ ] Then the farmer roasts the cacao seeds in an oven.

c. [ ] After that, the cacao seeds go to the factory.

d. [ ] The farmer picks the cacao beans and puts them in the sun.

e. [ ] The seed grows into a seedling and then a tree.

f. [ ] The factory workers add sugar and milk, and the chocolate is ready!

g. [ ] The tree grows cacao beans.

h. [ ] The seed germinates.

Activity 4 on Units (1,2 & 3)



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(water - seeds - grow - germination)

A : How do we ❶ .... new tomatoes?

B : Put tomato ❷ .... in the soil.

A : What should we do after that?

B : You should ❸ .... them every day.

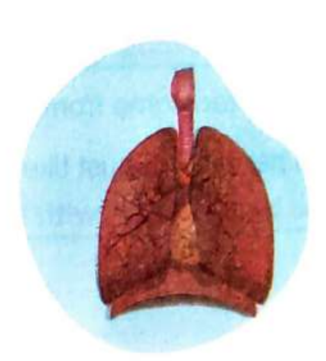
A : What is this process called?

B : It's called the ❹ .... process.

2 Complete the sentences

أكمل الجمل:

❶ It's ....

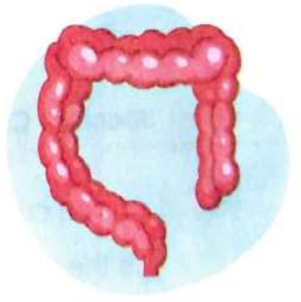


❷ They are my ....





❸ It's ....



❹ It's the large ....

Review 1

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A		B
1 The gastric juice		a. for the desert.
2 Egypt is famous for		b. in rivers.
3 Dolphins aren't		c. digests food.
4 Camels are perfect animals		d. its cotton.
		e. dangerous.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الاتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Most people in Egypt like to drink tea. Do you know where tea comes from? It comes from tea tree. Today, most tea comes from trees which grow in Asia اسيا. Farmers plant tea trees on mountains and open areas. When the plants become taller, farmers take their leaves and make tea.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where does tea come from? ....

2. What do people in Egypt like to drink? ....

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 Farmers take the tea trees roots.		
4 Most tea trees grow in Africa.		

5 Read and complete:

اقرأ ثم أكمل:

special - Camels - mouth - waste - biggest

1. .... can carry people and things.
2. The .... is the beginning of digestive system.
3. The large intestine removes ....
4. The sunflower is the .... flower.
5. Egyptian cotton is ....

6 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Let's .... it for lunch.

ⓐ has ⓑ have ⓒ are having

2. I think cats are .... than dogs.

ⓐ nice ⓑ nicest ⓒ nicer

3. Spider are very ....

ⓐ help ⓑ helpful ⓒ helper

4. The pelican .... small fish.

ⓐ walks ⓑ runs ⓒ eats

5. We .... rice in Egypt.

ⓐ grow ⓑ play ⓒ sleep

7 Rearrange the following to make sentences أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل

1. like - Tarek - Does - crocodiles?

---

2. needs - ears - big - The fennec fox - hear - to.

---

3. noiser - are - Parrots - spiders - than.

---

4. brought - Europe - Who - chocolate - to?

---

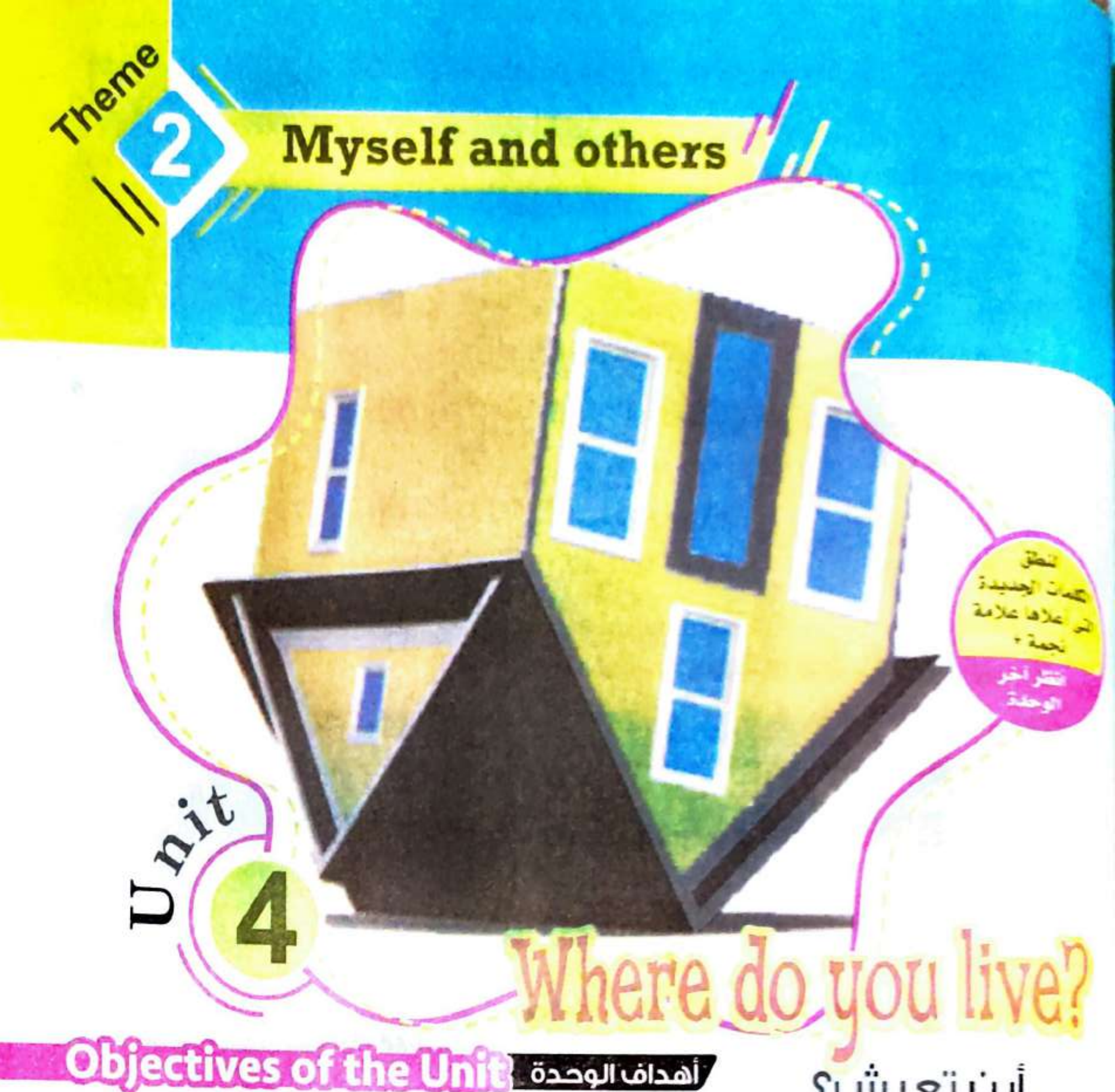
8 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات:

sunflower - tomatoes - seeds - roots - leaves - plants - grow

---





أين تعيش؟

Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different houses and places in a town.

   • يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن انواع المنازل المختلفة والاماكن فى المدينة.

2. Practice making sentences with prepositions.

   • يتدرب الطالب على تكوين جمل بها حروف جر.

3. Read and listen to a short story.

   • يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة

4. Learn about and say words with /f/ and /v/.

   • يقرأ الطالب ويقول كلمات بها الصوتين /f/ و /v/.

5. Write a fact file.

   • يكتب الطالب ملف حقائق.

6. Research and make a poster.

   • يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ويعمل بوستر.



★ At home

Vocabulary



bedroom حجرة نوم

room حجرة



living room حجرة المعيشة

Inside the house
داخل المنزل



balcony بلكونة



kitchen مطبخ



bathroom* حمام



dining room* حجرة الطعام

Help your child learn about places inside the house. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الأماكن داخل المنزل.



house منزل



apartment شقة



tent خيمة





cave كهف



houseboat قارب للسكن

Adjectives صفات

lovely	جميل	favorite	مفضل
fantastic	رائع	whole*	بالكامل

Verbs افعال

organize	يُرتب	move to	ينتقل إلى (يعزّل)
relax	يستريح / يسترخى	do homework	يعمل الواجب المنزلى
sounds good	يبدو جيداً		

Other words كلمات أخرى

for me	بالنسبة لى	rock	صخرة
too	جدًا / ايضا	outside	بالخارج
cloth	قماش	inside	بالداخل
quietly	بهدوء		

Help your child learn about different houses. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن المنازل المختلفة.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

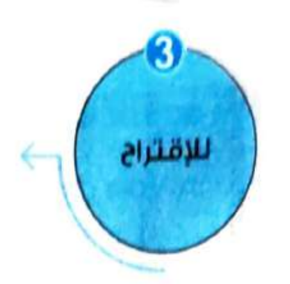
1 لطلب المساعدة

Can you help me?

للموافقة: Yes, sure. للرفض: Sorry, I can't.



- That sounds good.



Let's + inf مصدر الفعل.

- Let's do it.

4 ندرس فى هذا الدرس الاماكن المختلفة داخل المنزل.

bedroom | living room | bathroom | dining room | kitchen | balcony

5 ونتعلم ايضاً الاشكال المختلفة للمنازل وما يميز كل منزل:

house	It is big.	يكون كبير.
apartment	has a balcony	بها بلكونة
tent	made of cloth	تصنع من القماش
cave	inside a rock	داخل صخرة
houseboat	on the water	يكون على الماء

1 Listen and read: استمع واقرأ:

Mom : Look at our lovely new apartment!

Talia : It's fantastic!

Mom : Which is your favorite room?

Talia : For me it's my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework quietly.

Mom : My favorite is the living room with the balcony. I can see the whole street! Talia, can you help me organize the kitchen?

Talia : That sounds good, let's do it!

2 Listen again and answer the questions: استمع مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة:

1- Where are Mom and Talia? ١- أين الام وتاليا؟

2- What are they talking about? ٢- عن ماذا كانا يتحدثان؟

3- What is Mom's favorite room? Why? ٣- ما الحجرة المفضله للأم؟ لماذا؟

---

3 Look and match: انظر وصل:

1- kitchen [c]

2- bedroom [ ]

3- bathroom [ ]

4- living room [ ]

5- dining room [ ]

6- balcony [ ]

a b c d e

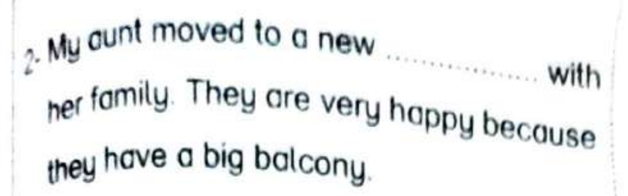






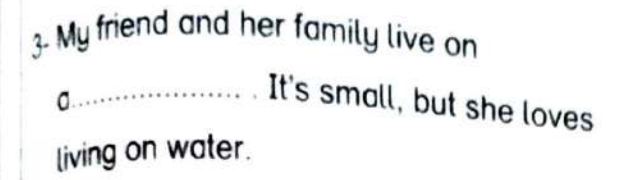
Help your child listen and answer the questions. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

4 Look and read. Then read and complete: انظر واقرأ، ثم اقرأ وأكمل:


1- My grandparents live in a ......cave......
The rooms of their house are in the rock.
Inside it's never too hot or too cold.

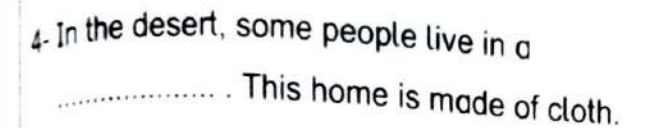

house

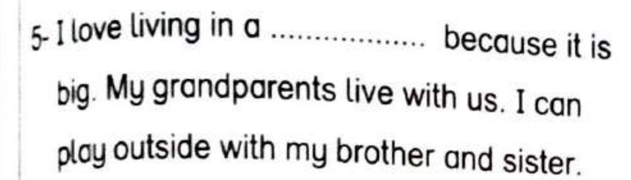

tent


2- My aunt moved to a new .... with her family. They are very happy because they have a big balcony.


cave


apartment


3- My friend and her family live on a.................... It's small, but she loves living on water.


4- In the desert, some people live in a .... This home is made of cloth.


houseboat

5- I love living in a .... because it is big. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister.

5 Work with a partner. Describe your home: اعمل مع زميلك وصف منزلك:



I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room. I play games with my brother in the living room. Where do you live?



I live in a house. There is a living room and three bedrooms.

Help your child read and complete. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل.

Activities



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بالكلمات الآتية:

(bedroom - house - living - dining)

Noha : Look at my new ❶ ....

Dina : It's very big. Where do you have lunch?

Noha : In the ❷ .... room

Dina : Where do you watch TV?

Noha : In the ❸ .... room

Dina : What's your favorite room?

Noha : For me it's my ❹ ....

2 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 My aunt moved	a. it has a balcony.
2 I live in an apartment	b. to a new house.
3 My friend loves water	c. It is made of cloth.
4 I live in a tent	d. so he lives on a houseboat.
	e. live in a house

3 Rearrange the following to make sentences

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. do - Where - you - live?

....

2. play - with - I - brother - can - my - outside.

....

3. room - What - your - is - favorite?

....

4. live - us - My - with - grandparents.

....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Complete the sentences:

أكمل الجمل:



1 My grandparents live in a ....



2 Samy loves living on a ....



3 My favorite room is the ....



4 I have a big ....

5 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

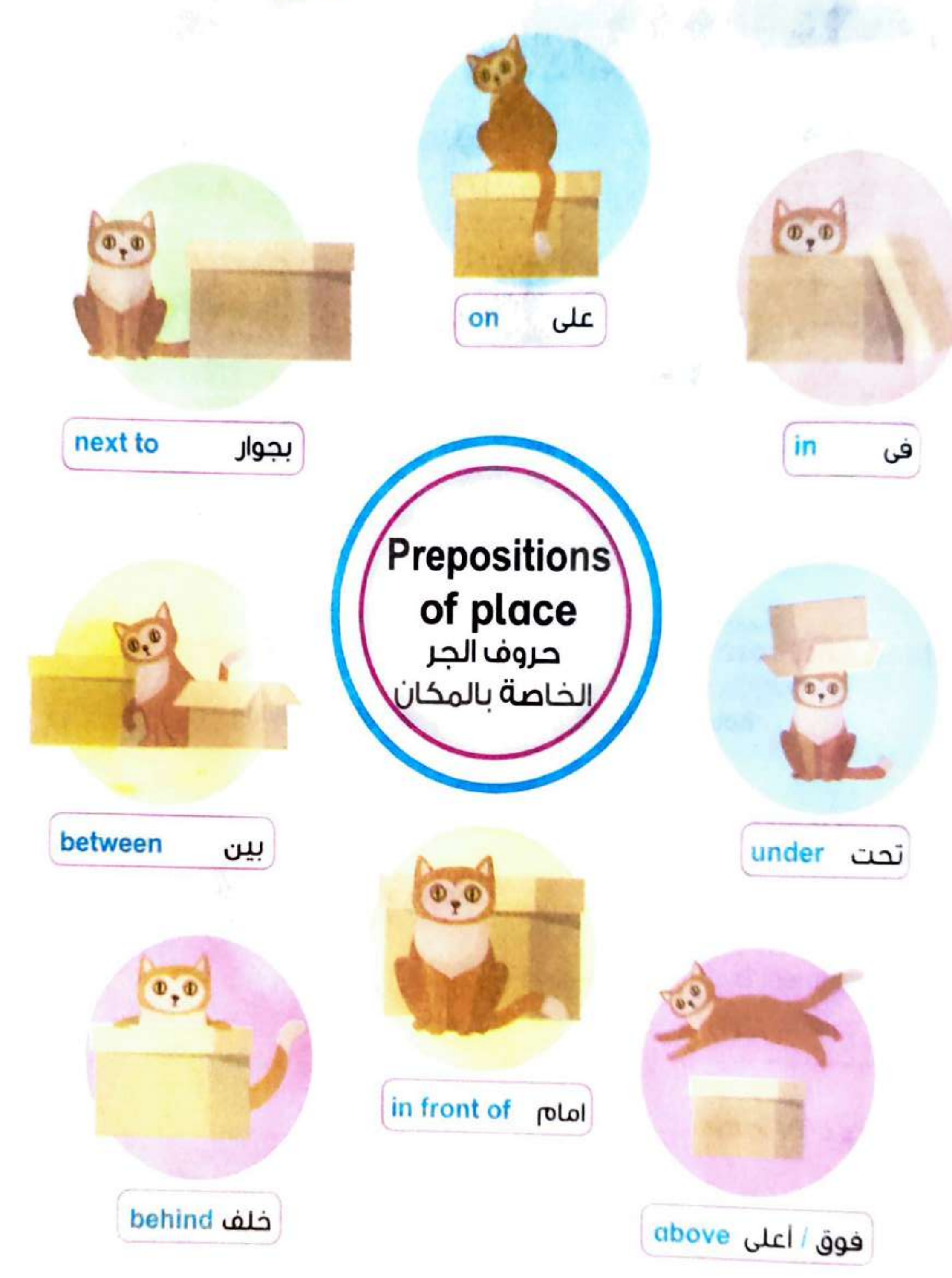
houseboat - fantastic - house - cloth - living

1. The tent is made of ....
2. She lives on a .... because she loves water.
3. My apartment is ....
4. Her .... has three bedrooms.
5. There's a TV in the .... room.

Lesson 2

Where is it?

Vocabulary



Help your child learn about prepositions of place. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.


school مدرسة


post office مكتب البريد


office مكتب




supermarket سوبر ماركت


hospital مستشفى


park حديقة عامة


shopping mall* مركز للتسوق


museum متحف

Verbs افعال

buy	يشترى	learn	يتعلم
send	يرسل	work	يعمل

Other words كلمات أخرى

village	قرية	couch*	كنبة
letter	خطاب	sick	مريض
the Nile	النيل		

Help your child learn about public places in the city. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الأماكن العامة فى المدينة.



Grammar



نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لتحديد مكان شيء ما.

- The kitchen is next to the living room.
- The stove is on the rack.
- My house is between the tall house and the tree.

لاحظ الفرق بين (on) و (above) حيث (on) تعني أن الشيء فوق شيء آخر ويكون ملامس له ولكن (above) تعني أن شيء يكون أعلى من شيء ولا يكون ملامس له





تعرف أسماء الأماكن العامة في المدينة وما الذي نفعله في كل مكان.

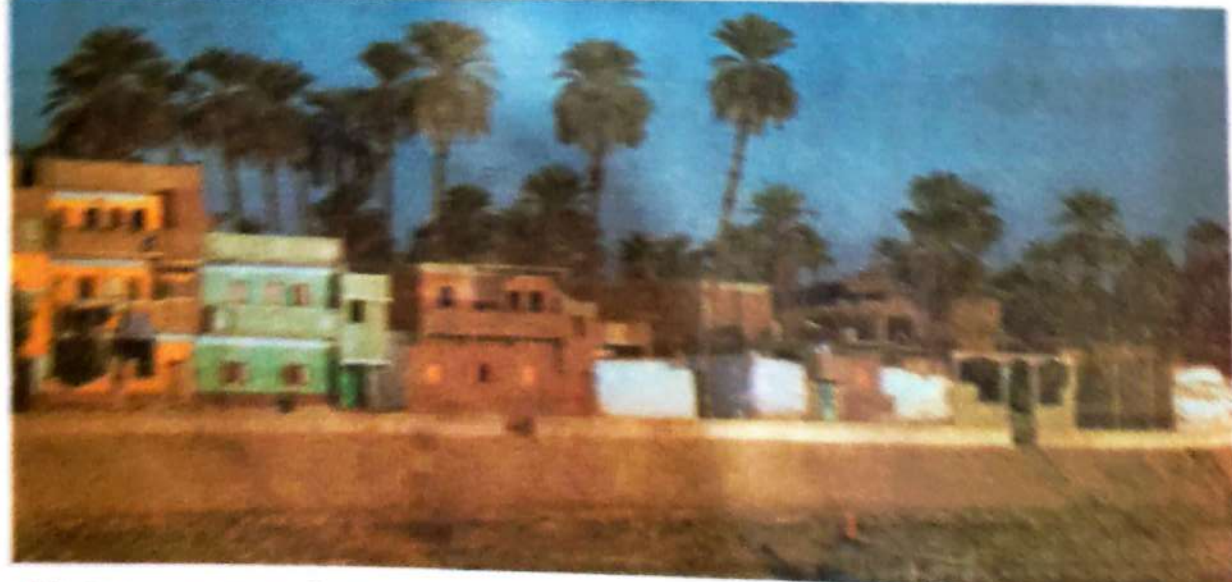
supermarket	we buy food	نشتري الطعام -
hospital	we go there when we are sick	نذهب إليه عندما نمرض -
school	we learn there	نتعلم هناك -
post office	we send letters	نرسل خطابات -
office	my mom and dad work there	أبي وأمي يعملان هناك -
shopping mall	we buy clothes and shoes	نشتري ملابس وأحذية -

1 Read and listen. Answer the questions:

اقرأ واستمع وأجب عن الأسئلة

My name's Zan. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family.

Our house isn't the biggest house in the village. It's between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.



- Which house does Zan live in?

....



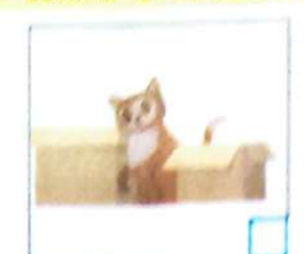
2 Look, listen, and number: انظر واستمع ورقم:

1- on 2- in 3- under 4- above 5- next to 6- between 7- behind 8- in front of
















1

3 Look and complete the sentences: انظر واكمل الجمل:

1. 

The tent is .... the car.

2. 

There's a plant .... the couch.

3. 

The pink house is ....
the red house and the yellow house.

4. 

The are 4 chairs and a table
.... the balcony.

5. 

The trees are .... the apartments.

Help your child look and complete the sentences. ساعد طفلك ان ينظر ويكمل الجمل.



4 Look, listen and number: انظر واستمع ورقم:

1- school	2- supermarket	3- shopping mall
4- post office	5- office	6- hospital



5 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 where we buy food	a. office
2 where we send letters	b. supermarket
3 where I learn	c. shopping mall
4 where I buy clothes and shoes	d. school
5 where my mom and dad work	e. hospital
6 where we go when we are sick	f. post office

Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك يقرأ ويصل.

6 Look and connect: انظر وصل،



7 Where is it? Look at the map and make sentences:

أين هو؟ انظر إلى الخريطة وكون جمل (اختر حرف الجر المناسب لعمل الجمل):

1- hospital / school

The hospital is next to the school.

2- shopping mall / supermarket / museum

____

3- Green Street / school / post office

____

4- the park / the shopping mall

____

Help your child make sentences with prepositions. ساعد طفلك ان يكون جمل باستخدام حروف الجر

Activities



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

اكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

(between - apartment - live - village)

Mrs Eman : Where do you ❶ .... , Zain?

Zain : In a ❷ .... next to the Nile.

Mrs Eman : Do you live in an ❸ .... or a house?

Zain : I live in a house.

Mrs Eman : Is your house the blue one?

Zain : Yes, it's ❹ .... the yellow house and the brown house.

2 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A

1. The tent is next
2. The trees are in front
3. We buy food
4. The shopping mall is

B

a. at the supermarket.
b. between the park and the office.
c. of our house.
d. where I learn.
e. to the car.

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We send letters at the ....

   a school b hospital c post office

2. A: .... is the hospital?

   B: It's behind the park.

   a When b Where c Which

3. I buy clothes and shoes at the ....

   a office b hospital c shopping mall

4. My sister is sick. She's going to ....

a hospital b museum c school

5. There's a cat .... the chair.

a between b next c on

4 Complete the sentences: أكمل الجمل:

1 There's a plant .... the armchair.

2 My dad works in an ....

3 The car is .... to the bus.

4 I can learn at ....

5 Rearrange the following to make sentences أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. mall - There's - behind - a shopping - the supermarket.

---

2. is - the - post - Where - office?

---

3. next - school - The hospital - to - is - the.

---

4. buy - at - We - supermarket - food - the.



★ My town

Vocabulary



office مكتب




store محل / متجر



supermarket سوبر ماركت



school مدرسة





bank بنك



hospital مستشفى



shopping mall مركز تسوق



station محطة

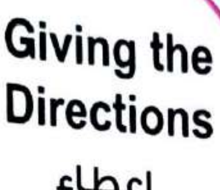


park حديقة عامة

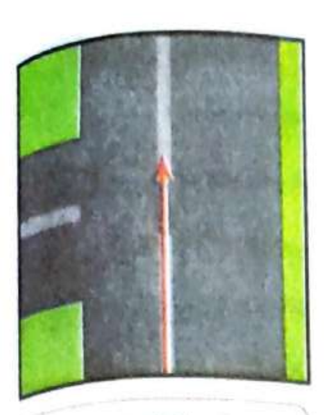


sports club نادى رياضى

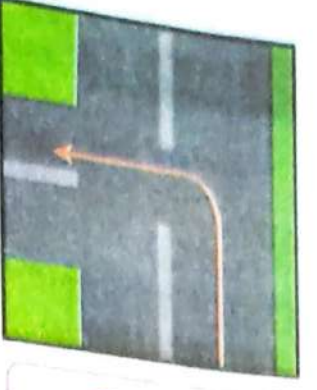
Help your child learn about places in the town. ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن اماكن فى المدينة.



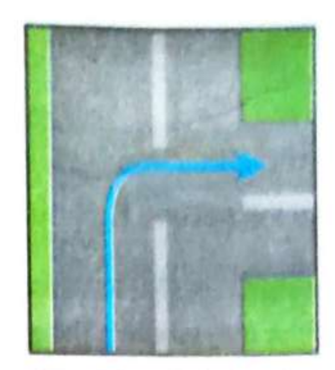
Giving the Directions
اعطاء الاتجاهات



Go straight* ahead
سر بشكل مستقيم



Turn left
استدر يسارًا



Turn right
استدر يمينًا



Take the second right
خذ ثانى يمين



Take the second left
خذ ثانى يسار



It's on the corner
إنها فى ركن / ناصية الشارع

Other words كلمات أخرى

Excuse me	اعذرنى	corner	ركن / ناصية
Thank you	اشكرك.	See you soon!	اراك قريباً!
near	قريب / بالقرب من	on the right	على اليمين
on the other side	على الجانب الآخر	on the left	على اليسار
by car	بالسيارة		

Help your child give the directions. ساعد طفلك أن يعطى الاتجاهات.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية



نَدرس في هذا الدرس اعطاء الاتجاهات.

Excuse me, where's the + (المكان)?

ولاجابة نستخدم:

2
ثانياً
اعطاء
الاتجاهات

Go straight ahead.	Turn right / left.
Take the second right / left.	It's on the corner.
It's on the right / left.	

- Excuse me, where's the supermarket?
- Go straight ahead. Turn left. The supermarket is on the right.

1 Read the text. Write the building names 1-4 on the map:

اقرأ النص. اكتب اسماء المباني ١ - ٤ على الخريطة.

I love my town. It is small, but it has stores, offices, a school and many other places. It is a good place to live.

I walk to school every morning. My school is next to the hospital. Next to the hospital, there's a park. I often play football in the park with my friends.

Near my house, there is a supermarket. It is between the station and the sports club.

The shopping mall is on the other side of the station, so the station is between the supermarket and the shopping mall. My dad's office is in front of the park. It's next to the post office.

Sports club
2-........................
Station
3-........................
My house
Post Office
4-...............
1-...............
Hospital
Park

Help your child read and write the building names. ساعد طفلك ان يقرأ ويكتب اسماء المباني.

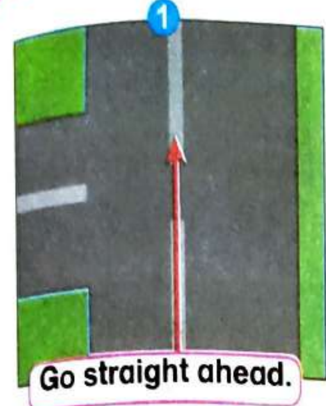
2 Read again and answer T (True) or F (False):

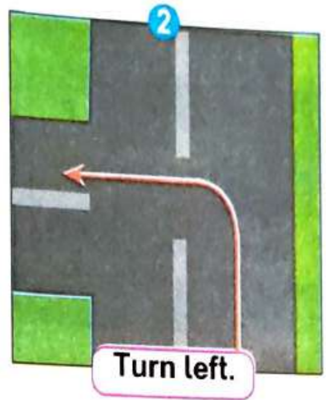
اقرأ مرة أخرى وضع صح أو خطأ:

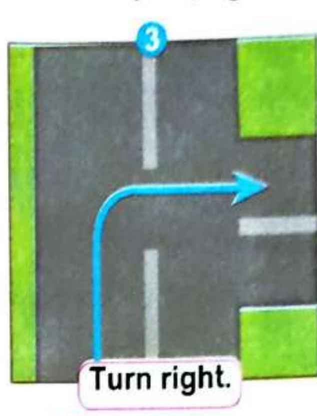
1. Nader's town is very big
2. He goes to school by car.
3. There are three houses in front of the shopping mall.
4. His town doesn't have a park.
5. His dad's office is next to the hospital.
6. The station is between the shopping mall and the supermarket.

3 Read and listen to the directions:

اقرأ واستمع إلى الاتجاهات:


1 Go straight ahead.


2 Turn left.


3 Turn right.


4 Take the second right.


5 It's on the corner.

4 Read and put the directions in the correct order:

اقرأ وضع الاتجاهات فى الترتيب الصحيح:

- [ ] Take the second left.
- [ ] Thank you!
- [1] Excuse me, where's the post office?
- [ ] Turn right.
- [ ] Go straight ahead.
- [ ] It's on the corner.

Post office

5 Dina is going to visit her friend Fareeda. Read and follow the directions. Does Fareeda live in house A, B or C?:

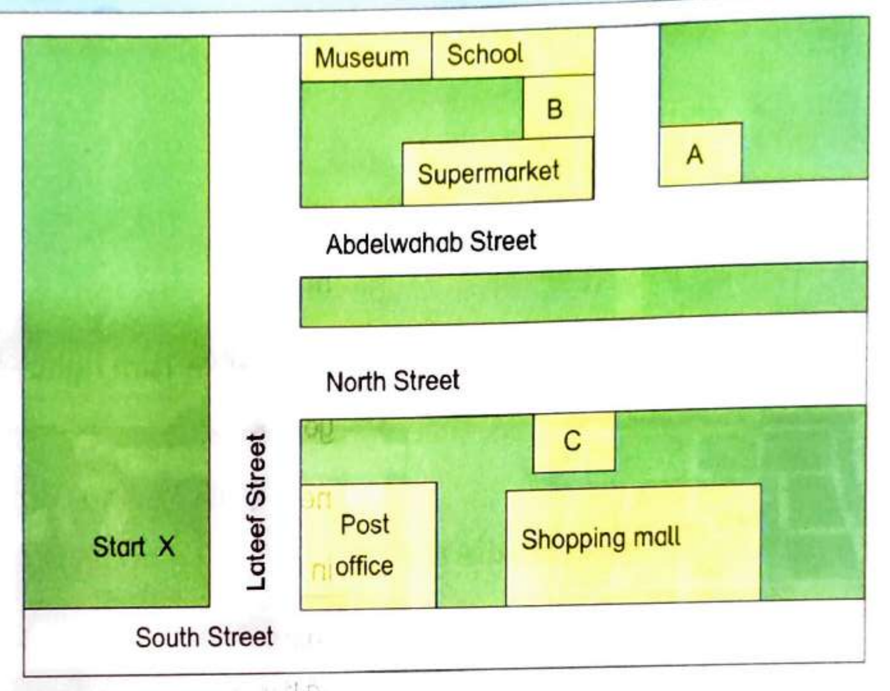
ستزور دينا صديقتها فريدة. اقرأ واتبع الاتجاهات. هل فريدة تعيش فى منزل (A, B أو C)؟

Hi Dina!

I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some directions. From the corner of South Street with Lateef Street, go straight ahead. Take the second right to Abdelwahab Street. Go straight ahead. Turn left at the supermarket. My house is between the supermarket and the school.

See you soon!

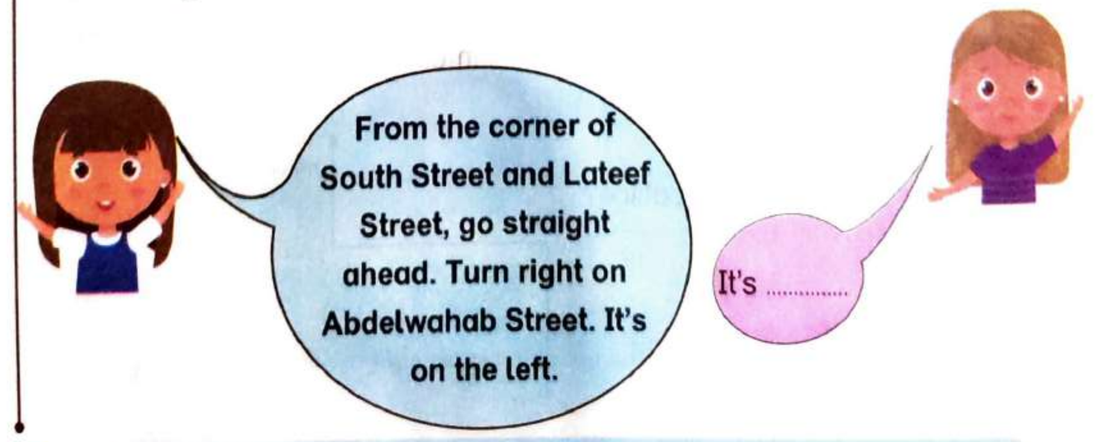
Fareeda xx



- Fareeda lives in house ....

6 Work with a partner. Look at the map and give directions. Which place is it?:

انظر للخريطة واعطى الاتجاهات، ما هو المكان؟



Help your child read and find Fareeda's house. ساعد طفلك ان يقرأ ويجد منزل فريدة.

Activities



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

اكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الاتية:

(front - left - where's - between)

Soha : Excuse me, ❶ .... , the museum?

Dina : Turn Right. It's on the ❷ ....

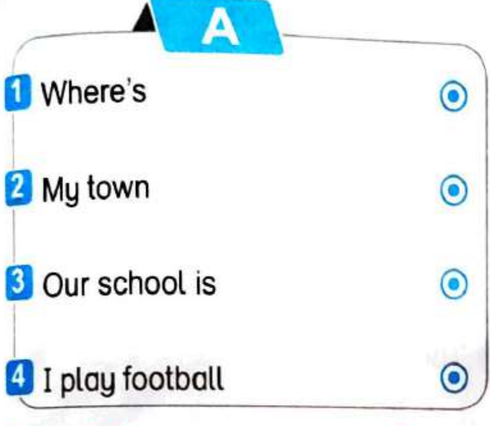
Soha : Is it in ❸ .... of the park?

Dina : No, it isn't. It's ❹ .... the post office and the shopping mall .

Soha : Thank you.

2 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:



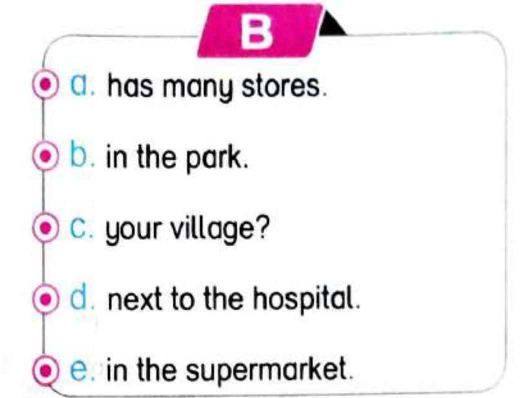
A

1 Where's

2 My town

3 Our school is

4 I play football



B

a. has many stores.

b. in the park.

c. your village?

d. next to the hospital.

e. in the supermarket.

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Nader. I live in a big town. There are many places in my town. My school is near my house. I walk to school every morning. There's a park next to my school. I often play football in the park with my friends. There's a supermarket near my house. I can buy food from it. My dad works in an office. He goes there by car. There's a shopping mall next to the office.

A- Answer the following questions:

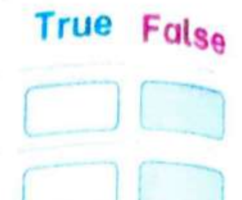
1. How does Nader go to school?

....

2. Where does Nader play football?

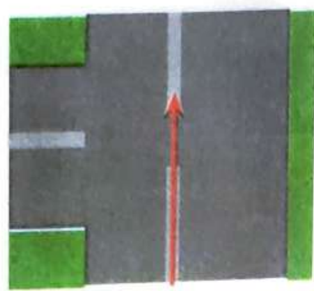
....

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):



3. Nader's dad works in a shopping mall.
4. The office is next to the shopping mall.

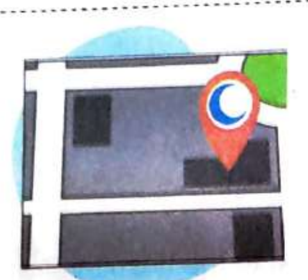
4 Complete the sentences: أكمل الجمل:



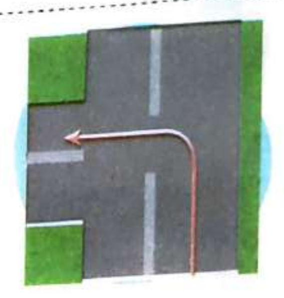
1. Go .... ahead.



2. The .... is on the right.



3. The hospital is on the ....



4. Turn ....

5 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. left - it's - Turn right - on - the.

----

2. bank - Where - the - is?

----

3. town - Hossam's - is - small - very.

----

4. a - sports - There's - my - club - town - in.

Lesson 4

★ My town



Hurghada* Beach
شاطئ الغردقة



Hurghada
مدينة الغردقة



bazaar
سوق شرقى (بازار)



Sahl Hasheesh
منطقة سهل حشيش



Sahara Desert الصحراء الكبرى



The Red Sea
البحر الأحمر



restaurant مطعم

Brighton
مدينة برايتون
(فى انجلترا)



Brighton* Pier
رصيف برايتون البحرى



The Upside Down House
المنزل المقلوب (فى برايتون)



Brighton beach
شاطئ برايتون



Store متجر / محل

Help your child learn about Hurghada and Brighton. ساعد طفلك يتعلم عن مدينتي «الغردقة وبرايتون».

Other words كلمات أخرى

in the east of	في شرق	safaris	رحلات السفاري
in the south of	في جنوب	photo	صورة فوتوغرافية
interesting	شيق	map	خريطة
tourist	سائح	games rides	ألعاب الملاهي
unusual	غير مألوف		

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 نتعلم في هذا الدرس كيف تكتب عن المكان الذي تعيش فيه.

Hi, I'm (اسم). I live in a city / village called (اسم مدينتك / قريتك). It is in (south / east of) (north / west of) (مكان المدينة).
About (عدد الناس) people live here. There is a (شيء يميز المكان). There are lots of (أشياء تميز المكان). We don't have............. but we have ....

Hi, I'm Ezz. I live in a city called Siwa. It is in west of Egypt. 35 thousand people live here. There are lots of palm trees here. We don't have skyscrapers, but we have nice houses.

2 نتعلم في هذا الدرس ايضا عن مدينة الغردقة **(Hurghada)** في مصر ومدينة برايتون **(Brighton)** في انجلترا ويجب ان نتعلم الاجابة عن بعض الاسئلة للتعريف بكل مدينة كالآتي:

1- Where is Hurghada? أين تقع الغردقة؟
- It's in the east of Egypt. / It's on the Red Sea.

2- How many people live there? كم عدد الناس التي تعيش هناك؟
- About 190.000 people live here.

3- What are the interesting places there? ما الاماكن الشيقة هناك؟
- Hurghada Beach, the Sahara Desert and Sahl Hasheesh.

4- What's in Sahl Hasheesh? ماذا يوجد في سهل حشيش؟
- Some beautiful houses.

1- Where is Brighton? أين تقع برايتون؟
- It's in the south of England.

2- How many people live there? كم عدد الناس التي تعيش هناك؟
- About 200.000 people live here.

3- What are the interesting places there? ما الاماكن الشيقة هناك؟
- There is a beach and there are cool stores and restaurants.
There is Brighton Pier and the Upside Down House.

3 نتعلم أيضا كيف نستخدم كلمات الاستفهام

للسؤال عن شئ / فعل

What ماذا / ما?

What's in Sahl Hasheesh? Some beautiful houses

للسؤال عن الفاعل العاقل

Who من?

Who lives in Hurghada? Mariam

للسؤال عن المكان:

Where أين?

Where's Hurghada? It's on the Red Sea.

للسؤال عن الزمن:

When متى?

When do you get up? At seven o'clock.

1 Read Mariam's article about Hurghada and complete the table :

اقرأ مقال مريم عن الغردقة ثم أكمل الجدول التالى :

City	Hurghada
Where is it?	
How many people live there?	
Interesting things in Hurghada	

Hurghada - My town

Hi. I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

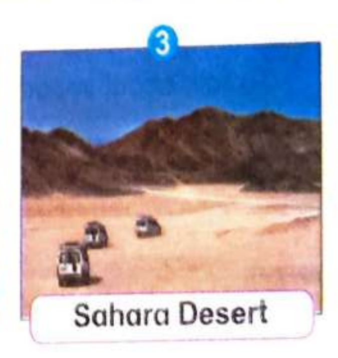


1

Hurghada beach

2

Sahl Hasheesh, Egypt

3

Sahara Desert

2 Read the text again and complete the questions:

اقرأ النص مرة أخرى واكمل الاسئلة :

1- .... lives in Hurghada? Mariam.

2- .... is Hurghada? It's on the Red Sea.

3- .... Mariam like living in Hurghada? Yes, she does.

4- .... 's in Sahl Hasheesh? Some beautiful houses.

3 How does Mariam make her text interesting? Check the items she uses:

كيف جعلت مريم النص الخاص بها شيق ؟ تأكد من الاشياء التى استخدمتها :

- a photo of her ☑
- drawings ☐
- photos ☐
- a map ☐
- a diagram ☐
- interesting facts ☐

4 Read and discuss: اقرأ وناقش :

1- How many paragraphs does Mariam write? ١- كم عدد الفقرات التى تكتبها مريم؟

- Two paragraphs.

2- Why does Mariam use bold text? ١- لماذا استخدمت مريم نص مظلل؟

- To talk about important information.

5 Read Alex's article about Brighton and complete the table:

اقرأ مقال (أليكس) عن برايتون ثم أكمل الجدول.

Town	Brighton
Where is it?	
How many people live there?	
Interesting things in Brighton	

Brighton – my town

Hi, I'm Alex. I live in a city called Brighton. It is in the south of England. It's a small city and about 200,000 people live here.

In Brighton, there is a beach and there are lots of cool **stores** and **restaurants**. Lots of tourists come to my town to go to the beach. We also have **Brighton Pier**.

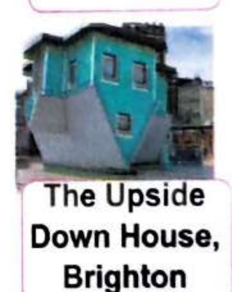
There are many games and rides for children here. We also have a very unusual house in Brighton – the **Upside Down House**! It's great fun!


Alex


Brighton on the map


Brighton Beach


Brighton Pier


The Upside Down House, Brighton

Activities



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

اكمل المحادثة باستخدام الكلمات الاتية:

(many - east - city - Where)

Nadia : Which ❶ .... do you live in?

Esraa : I live in Hurghada.

Nadia : ❷ .... is it?

Esraa : It's in the ❸ .... of Egypt.

Nadia : How ❹ .... people live in Hurghada?

Esraa : About 190.000 people live here.

2 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

restaurants - bazaars - Desert - Upside - on

1. There are many .... in Brighton where you can eat food.
2. The .... Down House is in Brighton.
3. Hurghada is .... the Red Sea.
4. Tourists visit the Sahara ....
5. Hurghada has some beautiful houses and interesting ....

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Hurghada is in the	a. called Hurghada.
2 I visited the Upside	b. Down House.
3 I live in a city	c. go on safaris.
4 Lots of tourists	d. east of Egypt.
	e. west of Egypt.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. live - Hurghada - I - called - in - a city.

---

2. Egypt - of - in - It's - east - the.

---

3. go on - Tourists - in - the - Sahara Desert - safaris.

---

4. are - stores - lots of - There - restaurants - and.

---

5 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

east - beach - people - the Sahara Desert - tourists





★ A short story - Pronunciation







summer	tourist boats	the Nile
الصيف	قوارب سياحية	النيل

Other words كلمات أخرى

English	اللغة الإنجليزية	from all over the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
Chinese	اللغة الصينية	one day	ذات يوم
interesting places	اماكن شيقة	on a boat	على قارب
suddenly	فجأة		

Verbs افعال

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
travel	يسافر	travelled	meet	يقابل	met
fall	يسقط	fell	stop	يتوقف	stopped
shout	يصيح	shouted	swim	يعوم	swam
call	ينادى	called	decide	يقرر	decided
save	ينقذ	saved	smile	يبتسم	smiled

1 Read and listen. How did Sherif's dad help the small child?

اقرأ واستمع. كيف أنقذ والد شريف الطفل الصغير؟

Living on a boat



My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile.
He likes the summer very much. He sees many interesting places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.
One day, the boat stopped and Sherif saw some children playing. Suddenly a small child fell into the river! The child shouted "Please help me!"
Sherif called his dad. Sherif's dad saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child! The child smiled and said, "Thank you so much!"
Sherif was very happy, but he also decided to learn to swim.

2 Read again and write T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ مرة أخرى وضع صح أو خطأ.

	True	False
1 Sherif lives in a city in the summer.		
2 Sherif can speak English and Chinese.		
3 The small child fell into the river.		
4 Sherif jumped into the river.		

3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer:

اعملوا في ثنائيات. أسأل وأجب.

1- Why is it important to help others?

لماذا من المهم أن نساعد الآخرين؟

2- Do you think it's important to know how to swim? Why?

هل تعتقد أن من المهم تعلم السباحة؟ لماذا؟

Help your child read the story and answer the questions. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويجيب عن الأسئلة

هل تحب القصة؟ فسر إجابتك؛

(4) Do you like the story? Explain your answer:

استخدم الكلمات الآتيه لوصف رأيك فى القصه

fun - interesting - OK - boring - I don't understand

The story is interesting because ______________________

____

____

Pronunciation

★ **Listen and say:** استمع وقل





لاحظ

المس رقبتك باصابعك وانطق كلمة (fish) هل تحركت احبالك الصوتية؟

انطق كلمة (van) بما تشعر؟

تنقسم الاصوات الساكنة فى اللغة الانجليزية إلى voiced وهى الاصوات التى تهتز فيها الاحبال الصوتية عند نطقها مثل ((b/d/g/j/l/m/n/r/v/w/y/z/th(this))

وهناك اصوات voiceless وهى التى لا تهتز الاحبال الصوتية عند نطقها مثل ((ch/f/k/p/s/sh/t/th (thin))

5 Match and write: صل واكتب:

cave - face - fan - fish - foot - living room - van - vegetables



5 Read and answer: اقرأ وأجب:

1- Where does Maggie work?

2- What does she do?

3- Where is the supermarket?

The people who help us: the supermarket worker



This is Maggie. She works at the supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Maggie checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

Activities



1 Read and complete: اقرأ وأكمل:

English - boat - fish - face - living

1. My nose is in the center of my ....
2. There are .... in the sea.
3. Nabil lives on a .... in the summer.
4. There's a couch in my .... room.
5. My dad works with tourists. He speaks ....

2 Complete the sentences أكمل الجملة:



1. Samy likes ....



2. There's a .... in the desert.



3. The .... has four wheels.



4. It's a ....

3 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. work - My - boats - tourist - parents - on.

---

2. the - Sherif's - saved - dad - child.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3. I - can - English - speak.

---

4. the river - fell - The - child - small - into.

---

4 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Sherif decided	a. and Chinese.
2 He speaks English	b. summer very much.
3 We saw some	c. children playing.
4 I like the	d. to learn to swim.
	e. fell into the river.

5 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

tourist boat - Nile - summer - places - speaks



Review



Inside the house داخل المنزل



room
حجرة



balcony
بلكونة



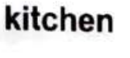
bedroom
حجرة نوم



living room
حجرة المعيشة



kitchen مطبخ





bathroom حمام



dining room حجرة الطعام

Different houses المنازل المختلفة



house
منزل



apartment
شقة



tent
خيمة



cave
كهف



houseboat
قارب للسكن

Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



on على



next to بجوار





in فى



between بين



under تحت

behind خلف



in front of امام



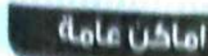




above فوق

Help your child revise Unit 4. ساعد طفلك ان يراجع الوحدة الرابعة.

Public places اماكن عامة







post office مكتب البريد





school مدرسة





office مكتب

supermarket سوبر ماركت



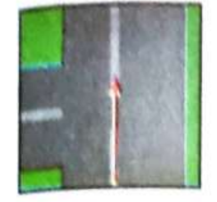


hospital مستشفى

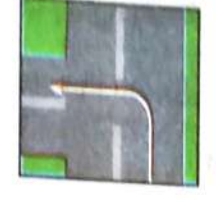


shopping mall مركز للتسوق

Giving Directions اعطاء الاتجاهات



Go straight ahead
سر بشكل مستقيم



Turn left
استدر يسارًا



Turn right
استدر يمينًا



Take the second right
خذ ثانى يمين



It's on the corner
إنها فى ركن الشارع



Take the second left
خذ ثانى يسار

My town مدينتى



Hurghada
مدينة الغردقة



Sahl Hasheesh
منطقة سهل حشيش



Brighton beach
شاطئ برايتون



Brighton Pier
رصيف برايتون البحرى

Unit 4 Where do you live?

			
beach شاطئ	The Red Sea البحر الاحمر	restaurant مطعم	Sahara Desert الصحراء الكبرى

Language Functions وظائف لغوية



Excuse me, where's the + (المكان)?

وللإجابة نستخدم:

Go straight ahead.	Turn right / left.
Take the second right / left.	It's on the corner.
It's on the right / left.	

- Excuse me, where's the post office?
- Go straight ahead. Turn right. The post office is on the corner.

Hi, I'm (اسم). I live in a city / village called (اسم مدينتك). It is in (مكان المدينة). About (عدد الناس) people live here. There is a (شيء يميز المكان). There are lots of (أشياء تميز المكان). We don't have............. but we have ....

Hi I'm Yasin. I live in a city called Helwan. It is in Egypt. About 55 thousand people live here. There are lots of factories here. We don't have skyscrapers but we have nice houses.

Grammar قواعد لغوية



◉ نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنحدد مكان شئ ما.

- The kitchen is next to the living room.
- The cave is in the rock.
- My house is between the tall house and the tree.

Pronunciation

★ Listen and say: استمع وقل







ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات

١ لنطق كلمة (whole) حرف (w) لا ينطق أى (silent) .

٢ لنطق كلمة (dining) انطق حرف (i) الأول ينطق مثل (i) كما فى كلمة (kite).

٣ لنطق كلمة (bathroom) حرفى (th) ينطقان مثل (ث) فى اللغة العربية .

٤ في نطق كلمة (couch) المقطع الصوتى (ou) ينطق كما فى كلمة (out).

٥ لنطق كلمة (mall) المقطع الصوتى (all) ينطق مثل نطق كلمة (fall).



٦ لا تنطق حرفى (gh) فى كلمة (straight) .

٧ لنطق كلمة (Hurghada) حرفى (gh) ينطقان مثل (ج) فى اللغة العربية.

٨ لنطق كلمة (Brighton) لا تنطق (gh) وحرف (i) ينطق مثل حرف (i) كما فى كلمة (five) .



مهارات الكتابة

Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

bedroom - favorite - sleep - read - house



1. It's my bedroom. It's my favorite room. I sleep in it. I read stories there. I like my house very much.

east - beach - people - the Sahara Desert - tourists



2. Hurghada is in the east of Egypt. You can visit the Hurghada beach. 190.000 people live there. The Sahara Desert there is very interesting. Tourists go on safaris in the Sahara Desert.

house - rooms - love - outside - garden



3. I live in a big house. It has a lot of rooms. I love it because it's big. I can play outside my house. My house has a beautiful garden.

tourist boat - Nile - summer - please - speaks



4. My dad works on a tourist boat. He travels up and down the Nile. He like the summer. He sees many interesting places. He speaks English.

Activity 4 on Unit (4)



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets: أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(outside - front - small - house)

Adel : Where do your grandparents live?

Hesham : They live in a ❶ ....

Adel : Is it big or ❷ .... ?

Hesham : It's big.

Adel : Is there a garden in ❸ .... of the house?

Hesham : Yes, I can play ❹ .... with my brother.

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 There are chairs	a. it's on the corner.
2 Sahl Hasheesh has	b. some beautiful houses.
3 Turn right,	c. where I can learn.
4 A school is a place	d. in the balcony.
	e. where I buy things.

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. A: .... is the bank? B: It's next to the hospital.
   - a What
   - b Where
   - c When
2. There's a .... in the desert.
   - a boat
   - b cave
   - c sea
3. Sherif .... English and Chinese.
   - a travels
   - b meets
   - c speaks
4. The office is in .... of the school.
   - a next
   - b front
   - c above
5. The hospital is .... to the post office.
   - a on
   - b behind
   - c next

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

4 Read and complete: اقرأ واكمل:

hospital - straight - river - schools- post office

1. The child fell into the ....
2. Go .... ahead, please.
3. We send letters at the ....
4. We learn at ....
5. When we are sick, we go to ....

5 Complete the sentences أكمل الجمل:

❶ This is a ....

❷ The cat is .... the box.

❸ I buy clothes from the ....

❹ Turn .... , please.

6 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. is - shopping - Where - mall - the?

---

2. grandparents - live - My - cave - in - a.

---

3. there - a station - behind - Is - house - your?

---

4. favorite - My - is - the - room - living room.

---

7 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My friend, Mariam lives in Hurghada. It's a beautiful city in the east of Egypt. In Hurghada there's a beach and there are lots of cool stores and restaurants. There is also the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. Sahl Hasheesh is in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where's Hurghada?

....

2. Where can tourists go on safaris?

....

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 Hurghada is a beautiful village.		
4 Sahl Hasheesh is in the east of Hurghada.		

8 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

bedroom - favorite - sleep - read - house



- -

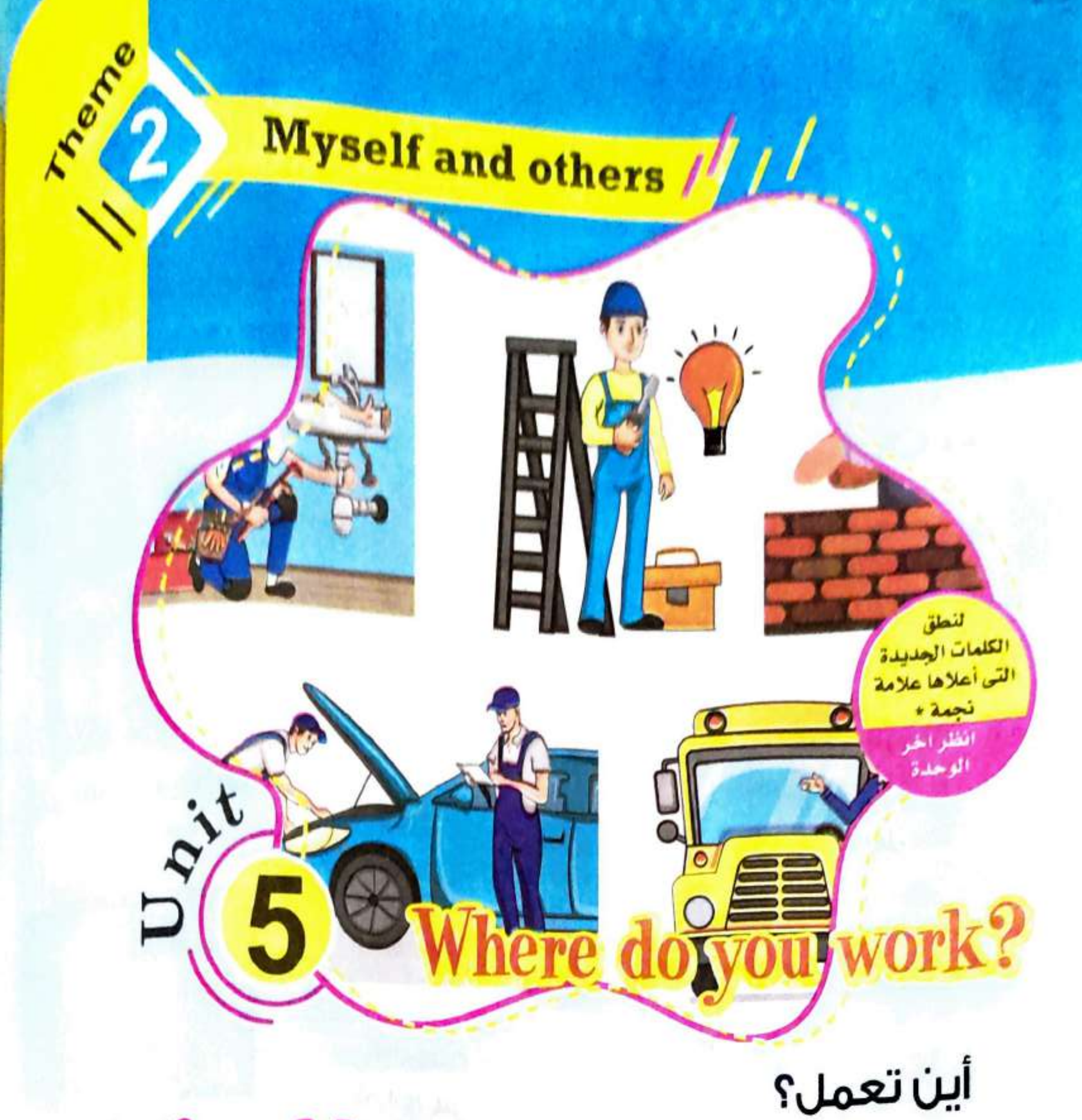
- -

- -

- -

- -





أين تعمل؟

Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, and write about workers in my community.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب عن العاملين في مجتمعه.

2. Learn about electricity.

- يتعلم الطالب عن الكهرباء.

3. Practice using this, that, these, those.

- يتدرب الطالب علي استخدام (هذا / هذه - ذلك / تلك - هؤلاء - أولئك).

4. Practice word stress on two-syllable words.

- يتدرب الطالب علي نطق المقاطع المشددة في الكلمات المكونة من مقطعين صوتيين .

5. Think and write about the pros and cons of different jobs.

- يفكر الطالب ويكتب عن مميزات وعيوب الوظائف المختلفة.

6. Make a report about workers in my community.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل تقرير عن العاملين في مجتمعه.

Lesson 1

★ Listening

Vocabulary



builder
عامل بناء



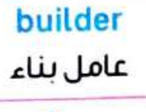
electrician*
كهربائي



plumber*
سباك



garbage* collector
عامل نظافة



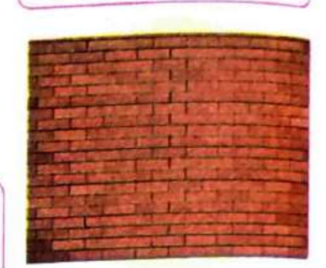
mail carrier
ساعي بريد



mechanic*
ميكانيكي



bus driver
سائق اتوبيس



walls
حوائط / جدران

Verbs افعال

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
deliver	يُوصل	delivered	get to	يصل إلي	got to
fix	يصلح	fixed	connect	يربط/ يُوصل	connected
keep	يحافظ علي	kept	take	يأخذ / يُوصل	took

Other words كلمات أخرى

electricity	كهرباء	garbage	قمامة
on a computer	علي الكمبيوتر	lights	اضواء / انوار
shower	دش	faucet	حنفية
safe	آمن	package	طرد / رزمة
pipe	ماسورة	on time	في الوقت المحدد

Help your child learn about different jobs. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الوظائف المختلفة.

لاحظ

كلمة (deliver) تعنى يوصل شىء من مكان لمكان وكلمة (connect) تعنى يُوصل شىء بشىء مثل يوصل الكمبيوتر بالكهرباء أما كلمة (take) يوصل شخص من مكان لمكان.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

نتعلم فى هذا الدرس عن الوظائف المختلفة وما تقدمه كل وظيفة.

Job الوظيفة	Decription الوصف
builder عامل بناء	- makes the place that you live in. يعمل (يبنى) المكان الذى تعيش فيه. - makes the walls strong and safe. يعمل الحوائط بحيث تكون قوية وآمنة.
electrician كهربائى	- connects your home to electricity. يوصل منزلك بالكهرباء.
plumber سباك	- connects your home to water. يوصل منزلك بالماء. - connects the pipes and faucets to your home. يوصل المواسير والحنفيات لمنزلك.
garbage collector عامل النظافة	- takes away all the garbage. يأخذ كل القمامة. - helps you keep your home clean. يساعدك أن تحافظ على نظافة منزلك.
mail carrier ساعى البريد	- delivers your letters and packages. يوصل خطاباتك وطرودك.
mechanic ميكانيكى	- fixes cars or buses. يصلح السيارات أوالاتوبيسات.
bus drivers سائق الاتوبيس	- takes you to school. يوصلك للمدرسة. - helps you get to school on time. يساعدك أن تصل إلى المدرسة فى الوقت المحدد.

تعلم ايضاً الاجابة عن اسئلة تخص الوظائف.

1. Which job is the most difficult? Why? أى وظيفة هى الأصعب؟ لماذا؟
   - I think being a mechanic is the most difficult job. Because fixing cars and buses is difficult.
2. Are any of the jobs dangerous? Why? هل أى من الوظائف خطير؟ لماذا؟
   - Yes, being an electrician is dangerous because you can get an electric shock.

Unit 5 Where do you work?

1 Listen and read: استمع واقرأ.

How many people helped you live in your home?

A builder made the walls strong and safe.

An electrician connected the electricity so you can use lights, watch TV, or do your homework on a computer.

A plumber connected the pipes and faucets so you have water to have a shower and brush your teeth.

A garbage collector takes away all the garbage, so you can keep your house nice and clean.

A mail carrier delivers your letters and packages. But you also need help when you leave the house. You need a mechanic to fix the car or the bus driver to take you to school.

2 Listen again and answer: استمع مرة آخرى وأجب:

1. Who made the place that you live in now?

----

2. Who helps you get to school on time?

----

3. Who connected your home to electricity so you can watch TV?

----

4. Who connected your home to water so you can brush your teeth?

----

5. Who helps you keep your home clean?

Help your child listen and answer the questions. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويجيب عن الاسئلة.

3 Listen and say. Then write: استمع وقل ثم أكتب:

builder - bus driver - electrician - garbage collector
mail carrier - mechanic - plumber

❶ 
❷ 
❸ 
❹ 

----

❺ 
❻ 
❼ 

----

4 What do you think?: ماذا تعتقد؟

1. Which job is the most interesting? Why? أي عمل هو الأكثر تشويقًا؟ لماذا؟

----

2. Which job is the most difficult? Why? أي وظيفة هي الاصعب؟ لماذا؟

----

3. Are any of the jobs dangerous? Why?
هل أي من الوظائف خطير؟ لماذا؟



I think being a bus driver is the most interesting job. You drive to many different places and help lots of people.

Did you know?

Cairo produces around 20,000,000 tons of garbage every year. Garbage collectors work hard to collect it all.

هل تعلم أن القاهرة تنتج ٢٠,٠٠٠,٠٠٠ طن من القمامة سنويًا. يعمل عمال النظافة بجد لجمع هذه القمامة.



Activities

1 Read and match:
اقرأ وصل:



1. A builder makes
2. A plumber connects
3. A bus driver
4. A mechanic



a. fixes your car.
b. the walls strong and safe.
c. the pipes and faucets.
d. takes away the garbage.
e. takes you to school.

2 Complete the sentences:




1. A .... connects the pipes.



2. He's a .... collector.



3. My father is an ....



4. A .... makes the walls strong.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

3 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

connects - letters - collector - mechanic - get

1. A garbage .... takes away the garbage.
2. An electrician .... your home to electricity.
3. A bus driver helps you .... to school on time.
4. A mail carrier delivers your ....
5. A .... fixes a bus.

4 Rearrange the following to make sentences

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. carrier - delivers - A mail - letters.

....

2. connects - faucets - A plumber - and - the pipes.

....

3. makes - live in - that - A builder - the place - you.

....

4. your - A garbage - keeps - clean - collector - home.

....

5 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

plumber - works - connects - healthy - hard

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الوحدة

....

....

....

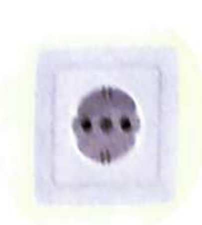
....

....



Lesson 2

★ Electricity



socket
مقبس (بريزة)



electricity
كهرباء



electrician
كهربائى



plug
فيشة



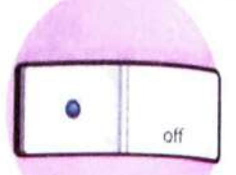
electric shock
صدمة كهربائية



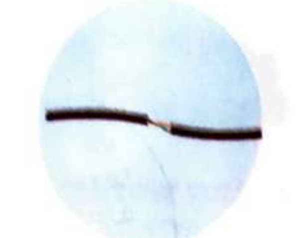
lightning
برق



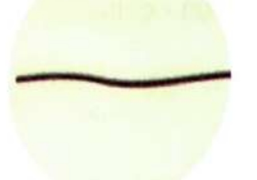
storm
عاصفة



turn off
يقفل



broken wire
سلك عارى (مكشوف)



wire
سلك



unplug
يفصل الفيشة

Verbs أفعال

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
study	يدرس	studied	control	يتحكم	controlled
practice	يتدرب / يمارس	practiced	burn	يحرق	burnt
become	يصبح	became	touch	يلمس	touched
waste	يهدر - يضيع	wasted			

Help your child learn about electricity. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الكهرباء.

Other words كلمات أخرى

safely	بأمان	300,000 kilometers/second	٣٠٠,٠٠٠ كيلو متر في الثانية
flash	وميض	wet hands	ايدى مبتلة
ground	ارض	always	دائمًا
never	ابدًا	dry	جاف
natural light	الضوء الطبيعى	save electricity	يوفر الكهرباء
fire	حريق	interviewer	محاور
How fast...?	كم سرعة؟	advice	نصيحة

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 لاعطاء امر بفعل شىء ابدا الجملة بـ

Inf / Always + inf.

- Wash your hand. / Always wash your hands.

2 لاعطاء امر بعدم فعل شىء نبدا بـ

Don't + inf / Never + inf.

- Don't make noise / Never make noise.

3 نتعلم فى هذا الدرس ما يجب أن نفعله ولا نفعله فى التعامل مع الكهرباء

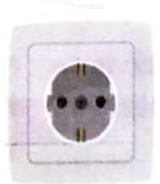
Don't do لا تفعل



1. Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. X
   لا تلمس أى شيء كهربى ويديك مبتلة.

2. Don't use a broken wire. X لا تستخدم سلك عارى.





3. Never put anything into a socket. X لا تضع شىء فى البريزة.

Do افعل



1. Only use plugs. ✓ استخدم الفيشة فقط.



2. Always make sure your hands are dry before you touch anything electrical. ✓ تأكد دائما أن يديك جافة قبل أن تلمس شىء كهربى.

1. When you leave a room, turn off the lights.
   عندما تترك الغرفة اطفئ الأنوار
2. Unplug your computer or TV if you aren't using them.
   افصل فيشة الكمبيوتر أو التليفزيون اذا لم تكن تستخدمهم.
3. Use natural light in the day.
   استخدم الضوء الطبيعي اثناء النهار

4 تتعلم أيضا كيف توفر الكهرباء

1 Look around you now. How many electrical things can you see?

انظر حولك. كم عدد الأشياء التى تعمل بالكهرباء التى تستطيع أن تراها.

I can see a TV, a radio,

2 Read the interview quickly. Then answer the questions:

اقرأ المقابلة سريعا ثم اجب عن الاسئلة.

Amira the electrician



This is Amira, she's an electrician. She studied and practiced for three years before she became an electrician.

She knows how to work safely with electricity.

Interviewer : Tell us something interesting about electricity.

Amira : Did you know, electricity travels faster than 300,000 kilometers/ second! In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. That flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year!



Interviewer : Is electricity dangerous?

Amira : Yes, very dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. It can also burn us. Electricity is always trying to go into the ground. It travels easily through water and our bodies are 70% water.

Interviewer : How can we use electricity safely?

Amira : Never touch anything electrical with wet hands.
Look, this is a broken wire - don't use it. You can get an electric shock or start a fire! Never put anything into a socket, only use plugs.

1. Why is electricity dangerous?

Help your child read the interview and answer the questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ المقابلة ويجيب عن الاسئلة.

2. Is it easy to become an electrician?
3. Why is a broken wire dangerous?
4. How fast can electricity travel?
5. How much is 70%?

a

b

c

3 Read and complete the sentences:

اقرأ وأكمل الجمل:

Never touch anything electrical with .... hands.

Always make sure your hands are .... before you touch anything electrical.

4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer about this part of the interview:

أسأل وأجب عن هذا الجزء من المحادثة أنت وزميلك:

Interviewer : Amira, how can we save electricity?
Amira : That's a great question. We often waste a lot of electricity. Remember these things:

- When you leave a room, turn off the lights.
- If you're not using your computer or television, unplug it.
- Use natural light in the day.

1. What do you do to save electricity?
   I turn off lights when I leave a room.
   I unplug the computer or TV if I am not using them.
2. What does your family do to save electricity?
   ....
3. What is the good advice in the interview with Amira?
   ....
4. Why do we need to save electricity?
   ....
5. Do you want to be an electrician? Why?
   ....

Activities



1 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

off - dangerous - lightning - light - electricity

1. Amira practiced .... for three years.
2. In a storm, we sometimes see a flash of ....
3. Use natural .... in the day.
4. Electricity is very ....
5. Turn .... the lights, when you leave a room.

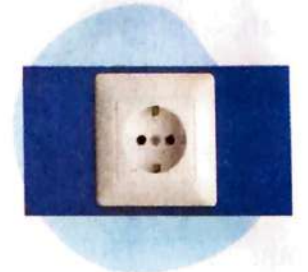
2 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Electricity travels faster	a. into a socket.
2 Don't use	b. if you aren't using it.
3 Never put anything	c. in the day.
4 Unplug the computer	d. than 300,000 km/s.
	e. a broken wire.

3 Complete the sentences:


أكمل الجمل:



1 This is a ....



2 My uncle is an ....



3 We never touch a broken ....



4 Only use a ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My brother Hany wants to be an electrician. Electricity is very dangerous, so he will study and practice it for years. He always buys books about electricity. He learns a lot of information about electricity. He learns that electricity travels faster than 300,000 kilometers in a second. In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. That flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What does Hany buy?

---

2. How fast can electricity travel?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 Hany wants to be a plumber.		
4 We see a flash of lightning in a storm.		

5 Rearrange the following to make sentences

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. should - We - save - electricity.

---

2. the - Turn - , please - off - lights.

---

3. electricity - Why - dangerous - is?

---

4. with - touch - Never - wet hands - anything - electrical.

Lesson 3

★ Workers in our community



truck شاحنة



tools ادوات



hard hat
قبعة صلبة

repair shop
ورشة اصلاح السيارات



bicycle دراجة

The demonstrative pronouns اسماء الاشارة



this هذا / هذه

that ذلك / تلك

these هؤلاء

those اولئك

Verbs افعال

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
break	يتعطل	broke	take	يأخذ	took
fix	يصلح	fixed	drip	تنقط (الحنفية)	dripped

Other words كلمات أخرى

skills	مهارات	special skills	مهارات خاصة
help each other	نساعد بعضنا البعض	for example	على سبيل المثال
local homes	منازل محلية	businesses	شركات / أعمال تجارية
it makes you feel good	يجعلك تشعر بشعور جيد	interesting	شيق
job	وظيفة	boring	ممل

Help your child learn about workers in his community. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن العاملين فى مجتمعه.

Grammar قواعد لغوية



◉ للاشارة الى شيء مفرد قريب (يعد أو لا يعد) نستخدم (this) بمعنى (هذا / هذه).

- This is the socket the electrician is fixing.



◉ للاشارة الى شيء مفرد بعيد (يعد أو لا يعد) نستخدم (that) بمعنى (ذلك / تلك).



- That's the water dripping from the faucet.



◉ للاشارة الى أشياء (جمع) قريبة نستخدم (These) بمعنى (هؤلاء).

- These are the plumber's tools.



◉ للاشارة الى أشياء (جمع) بعيدة نستخدم (Those) بمعنى (أولئك).



- Those are the builders' hard hats.

لاحظ

عند اختيار This / That / These / Those نحدد هل الشيء مفرد أو جمع إذا كان مفرد نختار إما (That / This) وإذا كان جمع نختار (These أو Those).

- ثانياً: نحدد إذا كان قريب أو بعيد. إذا كان قريب نختار (This / These) والبعيد (That / Those).

2
Possessive ('s)

◉ للتعبير عن الملكية نستخدم ('s) كالتالى:

الشيء المملوك + 's + المالك

- The builder's hat is hard.

◉ إذا كان الاسم جمع وآخره (s) اضف (') بعد (s) كالتالى:

- The builders' hats are hard.

◉ الاسماء الجمع التى لا تنتهى بحرف (s) نضيف ('s):

- The children's toys are nice.




1 Read. Which people help you every day?



Workers in our community

Do you like helping people? In our community we can all help each other. Many of the people around us have special skills to help us. Together, we help each other and make our city or village a nicer place to live.

For example, a bus driver helps a builder to get to work. When the bus breaks, the bus driver needs the mechanic to fix the bus. All the local homes and businesses need a mail carrier to deliver the packages and letters. We all need the garbage collector to take away our garbage and keep our streets clean.

We can all help each other. It's the right thing to do and it makes you feel good.

We all like different things. Some jobs are interesting for some people, but they are boring for other people. All the jobs are very important.

2 Read and think. Do you agree with these sentences?

اقرأ وفكر. هل توافق على الجمل الآتية؟

Some jobs are more important than other jobs.

Some jobs are very boring.

We always need to help each other.

Help your child read and answer. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب.

3 Read and match the pictures to the sentences:

اقرأ وصل الصور بالجمل:

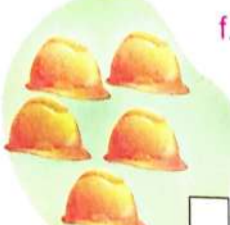
1. That's the bus driver's bus.
2. This is the socket the electrician is fixing.
3. That's the garbage collector's truck.
4. These are the plumbers' tools.
5. That's the mail carrier's bicycle.
6. This is the car the mechanic is fixing.
7. Those are the builders' hard hats.

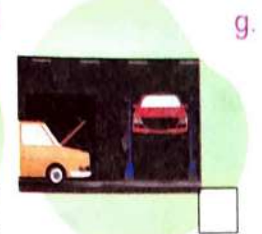
a.  5

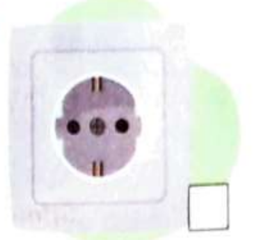
b. 

c. 

d. 

e. 

f. 

g. 

4 Look, read, and match the sentences to the pictures?

انظر واقرأ وصل الجمل بالصورة:

1. That mail carrier is delivering letters..
2. These mechanics work in the repair shop.
3. This bus is taking me to school.
4. Those builders are building the new hospital.



a



b





c



d

Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل.

5 Complete the sentences:

أكمل الجمل:

That - These - This - Those



1. Can you see? .... is the builder.



2. .... is my aunt. Her name is Amira. She's a teacher.





3. .... children are going to school.



4. .... children are watching TV.

6 Choose two jobs. Think of two advantages and two disadvantages for each one. Work with your partner.

اختر وظيفتان. فكر فى ميزتين وعيبين فى كل واحدة كالآتى:

1. A garbage collector is outside all day. When it rains, the garbage collector gets wet! But the garbage collector is happy because he helps to clean the city. He is healthy because he walks every day.

2. ....

Activities



1 Read and match:
اقرأ وصل:

A

1. These mechanics work
2. This bus driver is
3. Those builders
4. That mail carrier

B

a. are building the new hospital.
b. is delivering letters.
c. is fixing the faucet
d. in the repair shop.
e. taking me to school.

2 Complete the sentences with [this / that / these / those]:
أكمل الجمل:



1. .... is a bird.



2. .... are pens.



3. .... children are going to school.



4. .... is my aunt.

3 Read and complete:
اقرأ وأكمل:

builders - hard - electrician - truck - mail

1. That's the garbage collectors' ....
2. Those are the builders' .... hats.
3. This is the socket the .... is fixing.
4. That's the .... carrier's bicycle.
5. Those .... are building the new hospital.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many jobs in our community. Some jobs are interesting for some people, but they are boring for other people. All the jobs are very important. The jobs should help each other to make the community a good place to live. For example, a bus driver helps a builder to get to work. When the bus breaks, the bus driver needs the mechanic to fix the bus. We all need the garbage collector to take away our garbage and keep our streets clean. So in our community we can all help each other.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What should we do to make our community a good place?

----

2. Why do we need the garbage collector?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
3	All the jobs are interesting for people.		
4	When the bus breaks, the bus driver needs a mechanic to help him.		

5 Rearrange the following to make sentences

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. important - All - are - jobs - the.

----

2. are - tools - These - plumber's - the.

----

3. outside - all - A garbage - is - collector - day.

----

4. mail - That - is - carrier - packages - delivering.

Lesson 4

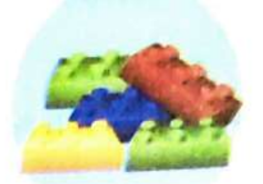
★ A short story



experiment يجرب / يختبر



screwdriver* مفك



blocks لعبة المكعبات



architect* مهندس معماري



tape measure شريط قياس





radio راديو



cell phone تليفون محمول



electrician كهربائي



fan مروحة

teacher مدرس

Verbs افعال

Present		Past simple
open	يفتح	opened
learn	يتعلم	learned
put	يضع	put

Present		Past simple
get angry	يغضب	got angry
explain	يشرح / يفسر	explained
call	يتصل	called

Other words كلمات أخرى

different	مختلف
curious	فضولي
on top of another	فوق الآخر
still	ما يزال
learn about	يتعلم عن
sometimes	احيانًا
patient*	صبور
adult	شخص راشد (بالغ)

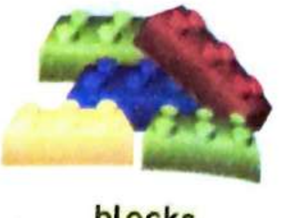
Unit 5 Where do you work?

1 Look, listen, and say:

انظر واستمع وقل،


screwdriver


tape measure


blocks

2 Read and listen. Do you know anyone like Lara, Talia, or Amir?

اقرأ واستمع هل تعرف أشخاص مثل لارا وتاليا وأمير؟

Three cousins

Lara, Talia, and Amir are cousins, but they are all very different.

When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She was very curious. She always carried a screwdriver and she opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had electricity. Her favorite question was How does it work? She learned about safety with electricity.

Lara

When Talia was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil.


Talia

Amir was always very patient and he liked helping people. Sometimes, big brothers can get angry at their little brothers, but Amir was never angry. He played, he helped, and he explained things all the time.


Amir

Today, Lara, Talia, and Amir are all adults but they still call each other when they need some help.

Help your child read and answer.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب.

3 Think, choose, and write. What do you think Lara, Talia, and Amir do today?:

فكر واختر واكتب ماذا تعتقد أن لارا وتاليا وأمير يعملون اليوم

an architect - an electrician - a teacher

1. Lara is ....

2. Talia is ....

3. Amir is ....

4 Read again and answer the questions:

اقرأ مرة أخرى وأجب:

1. Who does Amir call when the fan doesn't work? بمن يتصل أمير إذا لم تعمل المروحة؟

....

2. Who does Lara call when she wants to change something in her house?

بمن تتصل لارا إذا تريد تغير شيء في المنزل؟

....

3. Who does Talia call when she doesn't understand something in her English class? بمن تتصل تاليا إذا لم تفهم شيء في حصة اللغة الانجليزية؟

....

5 Ask and answer:

اسأل وأجب كالآتي (أجب إجابات آخرى):

- What did you like to play when you were little? – ماذا كنت تحب أن تلعب عندما كنت صغير؟

When I was little, I played with blocks and dolls.

....

- What do you like to do now? – ماذا تحب أن تفعل الآن؟

I like to do experiments.

....

- What job do you want to do? Why? – ما الوظيفة التي تريد أن تعمل بها؟ لماذا؟

I want to be a scientist to help people.

....

Activities



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

little - job - electrician - screwdriver

Soha : What's your ❶ ...., Amira?

Amira : I'm an ❷ ....

Soha : What did you do when you were ❸ ....?

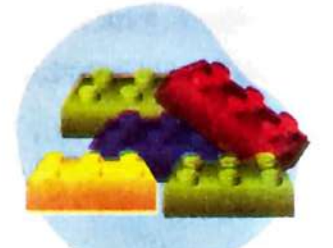
Amira : I always carried a ❹ ....

Soha : The electricity is very dangerous, isn't it?

Amira : Yes, it is very dangerous.

2 Complete the sentences

أكمل الجمل:



❶ Samy plays with ....



❷ This is a ....



❸ Hany is an ....



❹ The architect carries a .... measure.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة



3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Talia played	a. She carries a screwdriver.
2 The teacher is	b. do you want to do?
3 Lara is an electrician.	c. very patient.
4 What job	d. an architect.
	e. with blocks.

4 Rearrange the following to make sentences

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. curious - Lara - very - was.

----

2. likes - people - Amir - helping.

----

3. does - How - work - it?

----

4. She - experiment - to - loved - do.

----

5 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My sister Noura is in grade four. She wants to be an architect. When Noura was four, she played with blocks. When she was older, she started making things. She made a house for her cat. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. My father and mother always help her.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What did Noura make for her cat?

----

2. When did Noura play with blocks?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 Noura carried a screwdriver.		
4 Noura's parents always help her.		





تتكون الكلمات فى اللغة الانجليزية من مقاطع صوتية وكل مقطع صوتى يحتوى على صوت متحرك كما يلى:

Count the syllables.





١) كلمة bin تحتوى على مقطع صوتى واحد حيث بها صوت short i .

٢) كلمة dentist تحتوى على مقطعين صوتيين حيث بها صوتين متحركين [e / i].

لاحظ!

١) فى اغلب الكلمات إذا جاءت الحروف المتحركة معا دون فاصل فهى بذلك تعد مقطع صوتى واحد. فمثلا كلمة builder بها حرفين متحركين متتاليين (u / i) لكنهما لا يوجد بينهما فاصل إذا هما مقطع واحد.

٢) فى كلمة make تنتهى الكلمة بحرف e لكنه هنا لا يعتبر صوت متحرك لأنه غير منطوق أصلاً.

٣) إذا جاءت (e) آخر الكلمة وكان قبلها حرف (l) فهنا تعد كمقطع صوتى كما فى كلمة apple .

٤) لاحظ صوت حرف (y) يعد مقطع من المقاطع الصوتية فمثلاً كلمة city تحتوى على مقطعين صوتين.

1 Look and say. How many syllables are in each word?:

أنظر وقل كم عدد المقاطع الصوتية فى كل كلمة مما يلى:

electrician	4	e-lec-tri-cian	plumber	
teacher	2	teach-er	mechanic	
builder			dentist	
architect			doctor	

Help your child learn how to count the syllables. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يعد المقاطع الصوتية.

- بعد ان تعلمنا أن الكلمات الانجليزية تُقسم إلى مقاطع صوتية نتعلم أن هناك مقطع يكون مشدد فى الكلمة (أى أن صوت هذا المقطع يكون أكثر صوت بارز فى الكلمة).

وتختلف الشدة (ّ) فى اللغة العربية حيث تكون علي حرف فى الكلمة أما فى اللغة الانجليزية تكون على المقاطع ويجب معرفة المقطع المشدد فى اللغة الانجليزية لان ذلك ممكن يغير المعنى فمثلاً كلمة (pres-ent) تعنى هدية وذلك إذا كان التشديد على المقطع الأول. أما إذا كان التشديد على المقطع الثاني pres-ent يكون معناها يُقدم.

- ولمعرفة المقطع المشدد فى اللغة الانجليزية نقسم الكلمة إلى مقاطع صوتية ثم نسمع الكلمة ونحدد المقطع أو نبحث عن الكلمة فى قاموس وسنرى علامة (•) فوق المقطع المشدد فمثلا فى كلمة (dentist) تقسم إلى(den-tist) نلاحظ أن التشديد على المقطع الأول.

dentist

- لاحظ الكلمات الآتية التشديد على المقطع الأول.

plumber / teacher / builder / driver / doctor / architect

- الكلمة الآتية التشديد على المقطع الثانى.

mechanic

- الكلمة الآتية التشديد على المقطع الثالث.

electrician

2 Which one is correct? Listen and choose:

أى مقطع مشدد؟ استمع واختر:

dentist or dentist



3 Underline the stressed syllable in the words:

ضع خط تحت المقطع المشدد فى الكلمات:

plumber	teacher	builder	dentist	driver	doctor

4 Listen and circle the words which has the correct stress:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التى بها التشديد الصحيح:

1. plumber	plumber	4. mechanic	mechanic
2. teacher	teacher	5. driver	driver
3. builder	builder	6. doctor	doctor

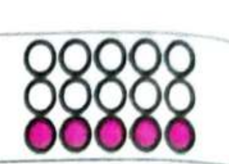


Math: Division

عملية القسمة هى تقسيم مجموعة أشياء إلى أجزاء متساوية.



Division is separating into different groups.
15 ÷ 3 = 5 Fifteen divided by three equals five.



عملية القسمة هى تقسيم العدد إلى مجموعات متساوية.







لدينا هنا ٤ تفاحات وولدين والمطلوب تقسيم التفاح على الولدين بالتساوى.

4 ÷ 2 = 2









9 ÷ 3 = 3

فى هذا المثال لدينا ٩ جزرات وثلاث بنات ولمعرفة كم جزرة لكل فتاه نقسم العدد الكبير (الجزر) على العدد الصغير (البنات).

1 Look and think. Write the missing numbers:

انظر وفكر. أكتب الأرقام الناقصة.

1 a	100 ÷ .... = 2	b	100 ÷ 2 = ...
2 a	100 ÷ 25 = ...	b	100 ÷ .... = 25
3 a	100 ÷ .... = 5	b	100 ÷ 5 = ...

2 Read and solve the problem:

اقرأ وحل المسألة.

There are two hundred children in Grade 4. Today they are going on a school trip.
Each school bus carries 50 children.
How many buses do they need?



Find out

What is this symbol ÷ called? A Swiss mathematician* called Johann Rahn used it first in 1659.

ماذا يسمى الرمز ÷؟ استخدمه عالم رياضيات سويسري يدعى يوهان ران لأول مرة عام ١٦٥٩.

A mathematician* works with numbers and math problems.
يعمل عالم الرياضيات مع الأرقام والمسائل الحسابية.

Lessons **5&6**

★ Pros and cons



good
جيد



bad سيء



aunt خالة / عمة



mail carrier
ساعى بريد



cleaner
عامل نظافة



backache*
الم بالظهر

Important words كلمات هامة

class	حصة / درس	pros	مميزات
on one hand	من جهة	cons	عيوب
on the other hand	من الجهة الآخرى		

Other words كلمات أخرى

point	نقطة	America	أمريكا
fun	ممتع	heavy	ثقيل
everyone	كل احد	weather	طقس
great	رائع	everybody	كل شخص
exercise	تدريب / تمرين	wake up	يستيقظ

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

◉ ندرس فى هذا الدرس مميزات (pros) وعيوب (cons) وظيفة ساعى البريد:

Pros مميزات	Cons عيوب
- Mail carriers get a lot of exercise.	- The mail bag is very heavy.
- They speak to a lot of people.	- It can give some mail carriers a backache. - Mail carriers wake up very early.

1 Think about a mail carrier's job. What are the good and bad things about the job?:

فكر فى وظيفة ساعى البريد ما مميزات وعيوب هذه الوظيفة؟

2 Read and complete the table:

اقرأ وأكمل الجدول:



My name is Sherifa. In class this week, we're talking about the good and bad things about different jobs. My aunt is a mail carrier in America. I talked to her about her job and she told me some of the pros and cons.



Pros and cons of being a mail carrier.
What's it like to be a mail carrier?
There are some good and bad points about the job.
On one hand, mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or wet and cold. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise. They also speak to a lot of people.
This is a nice part of the job. Everybody likes getting mail, so everyone likes meeting the mail carrier. On the other hand there are also some bad things to think about. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. The mail bag is very heavy.
It can give some mail carriers a backache. Another bad thing is that they wake up very early. My aunt starts work at 6 o'clock in the morning.

Pros	Cons
- Mail carriers get a lot of exercise.	....
....	....
....	....

3 Read again and answer the questions:

1. What is the paragraph about? عن ماذا تدور الفقرة السابقة؟

- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

2. How does Sherifa start her paragraph? كيف بدأت شريفة الفقرة الانشائية؟

- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

3. How does this help the reader? كيف ساعد ذلك القارىء؟

- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

Help your child know the pros and cons of being a mail carrier.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف المميزات والعيوب فى أن يكون ساعى بريد.

4 Choose a job. Write some pros and cons:

اختر وظيفة واكتب بعض المميزات والعيوب:

The job I chose is ....

Pros	Cons

A report about people who help us

5 Read the report:

تقرير عن ناس تساعدنا:



Workers who made

our school



The builders build the school. The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights.

The cleaners keep the school clean. The bus drivers bring the children to school. The garbage collectors take away our garbage.

The mechanics fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.



Activities



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(cons - fix - mechanic - streets)

Mazin : What's your job, Mr Ashraf?

Mr Ashraf : I'm a ❶ ....

Mazin : What are the pros of your job?

Mr Ashraf : I help people to ❷ .... their cars and buses.

Mazin : What's are the ❸ .... of your job?

Mr Ashraf : It's a hard work. I work all day on the ❹ ....

2 Complete the sentences:

أكمل الجمل:



❶ The .... builds the school.



❷ The .... connects pipes.



❸ The .... connects electricity .



❹ The .... fixes the cars and buses.

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Being a mail carrier	a things of each job
2 There are good and bad	b Hisham about his job
3 My father starts	c isn't an easy job.
4 I talked to	d is unhealthy
	e work at eight o'clock.

4 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

On - heavy - early - points - carriers

1. There are some good and bad .... about jobs.
2. The mail bag is very ....
3. I wake up very ....
4. Everyone likes meeting the mail ....
5. .... one hand, mail carriers are outside all day.

5 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب عنه في نهاية الوحدة

mail carrier - walks - speaks - healthy - likes

....

....

....

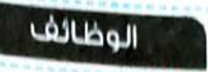
....

....

Review



Jobs الوظائف




builder
عامل بناء


electrician
كهربائى


plumber
سباك


garbage collector
عامل نظافة


mail carrier ساعي بريد


mechanic ميكانيكى


bus driver سائق اتوبيس

Electricity الكهرباء


lightning
برق


electricity
كهرباء


electrician
كهربائى


socket
مقبس (بريزة)


plug
فيشة


electric shock
صدمة كهربائية


broken wire
سلك عاري


turn off
يقفل


unplug
يفصل الفيشة

Workers in your community العاملون فى مجتمعك


truck
شاحنة


tools
ادوات


hard hat
قبعة صلبة


repair shop
ورشة اصلاح السيارات


bicycle
دراجة

Help your child review Unit 5.

ساعد طفلك يراجع الوحدة الخامسة.




this هذا / هذه


that ذلك / تلك


these هؤلاء


those اولئك




A short story قصة قصيرة


experiment يجرب / يختبر


screwdriver مفك


architect مهندس معماري


tape measure شريط قياس


blocks لعبة المكعبات


cell phone تليفون محمول


Lessons 5&6

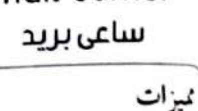

good جيد


bad سيء


aunt عمة / خالة


backache الم بالظهر


mail carrier ساعي بريد



on one hand	من جهة	pros	مميزات
on the other hand	من الجهة الآخرى	cons	عيوب

Grammar قواعد لغوية


This, That, These, Those

- للاشارة إلى شيء مفرد قريب نستخدم (this) بمعنى هذا / هذه.



- This is the screwdriver.

- للاشارة إلى شيء مفرد بعيد نستخدم (that) بمعنى (ذلك / تلك).

- That's the faucet.

- للاشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) قريبة نستخدم (These) بمعنى (هؤلاء).





- These are the plumber's tools.

- للاشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) بعيدة نستخدم (Those) بمعنى (اولئك).



- Those are the builders' hard hats.



ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات

١ لنطق كلمة (eletrician) انطق الحروف (cian) مثل نطق شن فى اللغة العربية.

٢ لنطق كلمة (garbage) انطق حرف (g) الأول كما ينطق فى كلمة (goat) و حرف (g) الثانى ينطق مثل (j) فى كلمة (jam).

٣ لنطق كلمة (mechanic) انطق حرفي (ch) مثل (k).

٤ في كلمة (plumber) حرف (b) صامت لا ينطق.

٥ لنطق كلمة (screwdriver) انطق الحروف (rew) مثل حرفي (ue) في كلمة (blue)

٦ كلمة (patient) المقطع الصوتى (tien) ينطق مثل كلمة (شن).

٧ كلمة (architect) الحرفين (ch) ينطقا مثل (k).

٨ كلمة (mathematician) المقطع الصوتى (cian) ينطق مثل (شن).

١٠ كلمة (backache) الحرفين (ch) ينطقا مثل (k) وحرف (e) آخر الكلمة لا ينطق.



مهارات الكتابة

Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

electrician - studied - connects - fixes - job



1. He is an electrician. He studied and practiced electricity. He connects your home to electricity. He fixes sockets. It's an interesting job.

bus driver - wakes up - takes - helps - amazing



2. He is a bus driver. He wakes up early. He takes children to school. He helps people a lot. It's an amazing job.

mail carrier - walks - speaks - healthy - likes



3. He is a mail carrier. He walks all day and gets a lot of exercise. He is healthy. He speaks to a lot of people. Everyone likes to meet him.

plumber - works - connects - healthy - hard



4. He is a plumber. He works all day. He connects our homes to water. He is healthy. His job is very hard.

Activity 5 on Unit (5)

1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

Why - angry - teacher - job

Gamal : Which ❶ .... is the most interesting?

Emad : I think being a ❷ ....

Gamal : ❸ .... do you like this job?

Emad : Because teachers help and teach children.

Gamal : What else?

Emad : They never get ❹ ....

2 Complete the sentences:

أكمل الجمل:



❶ A bus .... takes me to school.



❷ My uncle is an ....



❸ Those are the .... tools.



❹ .... off the lights.

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Don't use a	a. connects the elecricity to homes.
2 An electrician	b. working in the repair shop.
3 A mail carrier	c. delivers letters.
4 This mechanic is	d. broken wire.
	e. takes away the garbage.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Mr Magdy is my father's friend - He's a maths teacher, He is very patient. He likes helping people. He never gets angry. He likes his job. He helps his students. He explains the lessons to them. His students like him. I want to be a teacher, too.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What does Mr Magdy teach? ....
2. Who likes Mr Magdy? ....

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 Mr Magdy doesn't get angry.	☐	☐
4 Mr Magdy is my brother's friend.	☐	☐

5 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

1. A .... connects pipes and faucets.
   a builder b plumber c teacher
2. Electricity travels .... than 300,000 kilometers in a second.
   a longer b faster c taller
3. .... builders build the hospital.
   a This b These c That
4. .... is the socket the electrician is fixing.
   a Those b That c These
5. .... bird is flying in the sky.
   a These b Those c This

6 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

socket - electricity - walls - collector - unplug

1. If you aren't using your computer, ... it.
2. The .... is very dangerous.
3. A builder makes the .... strong.
4. A garbage .... takes away the garbage.
5. Never put anything into a ....

7 Rearrange the following to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. use - a broken - Don't - wire

- -

2. get - Who - you - helps - school - to?

- -

3. we - lightning - In - a flash of - a storm - see.

- -

4. carrier - That - letters - mail - is delivering.

- -

8 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

electrician - studied - connects - fixes - job

مجاب عنه في مهارات الكتابة

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -



ماذا تعمل؟

Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Read and learn about more jobs.
- يتعلم الطالب ويقرأ عن المزيد من الوظائف.
2. Explore what an industry is and the names of some common industries.
- يستكشف الطالب عن الصناعة وأسماء بعض الصناعات الشائعة.
3. Read a poem about some common jobs.
- يقرأ الطالب قصيدة عن الوظائف الشائعة.
4. Read a story about respecting workers.
- يقرأ الطالب قصة عن احترام العاملين.
5. Know about prime numbers.
- يعرف الطالب عن الأعداد الأولية.
6. Distinguish and pronounce short vowel sounds.
- يفرق الطالب بين الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة وينطقها.
7. Learn about words with the prefix dis-.
- يتعلم الطالب عن كلمات تبدأ بالبادئة (dis-).
8. Write about a job you want to do.
- يقرأ الطالب عن وظيفة يريد توليها.

Lesson 1

★ What do you do?

Vocabulary


catch fish يصطاد سمك


net شبكة


fisherman صياد سمك


Fishing
صيد السمك


boat قارب


tourism سياحة

Tourism industry
صناعة السياحة


guide* مرشد سياحى



hotel فندق


transportation المواصلات



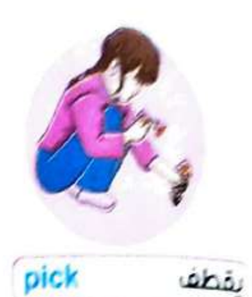


tractor جرار

Farming الزراعة



farmer فلاح



pick يقطف

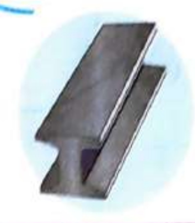
Mining* التعدين

geologist* جيولوجي



copper نحاس

coal فحم



iron* حديد



engineer مهندس



school مُدرسة





librarian امينة مكتبة



teacher مُدرسة

* الجيولوجيا هي علم دراسة طبقات الأرض من صخور وتربة.
* التعدين هو التنقيب عن الذهب والفحم من باطن الأرض.

Energy
الطاقة



wave power طاقة الأمواج



wind turbines* توربينات الرياح



wind farm مزرعة لطاقة الرياح

Verbs افعال

wake up	يستيقظ	grow	يزرع
come back	يرجع	look after	يعتنى بـ
sell	يبيع	explain	يشرح / يفسر
make sure	يتأكد	turn	يدور / يلف
make electricity	يولد كهرباء	find	يجد

Other words كلمات أخرى

early	مبكرًا	factory	مصنع
ground	الأرض	history	تاريخ
library	مكتبة	metal	معدن
scientist	عالم	information	معلومات

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

ندرس فى هذا الدرس مجموعة من الصناعات والامور المرتبطة بكل صناعة كالعاملين بها واماكن عملهم وطبيعة عملهم كالآتى:

Industry الصناعة	Who? من؟	Where? أين؟	What? ماذا؟
Fishing	fisherman	on the sea	catches fish / sells fish
Tourism	guide	hotels / outside	explains the history / tells tourists interesting stories
Farming	farmer	farm	grows / looks after vegetables and fruit
Mining	geologist	mountains	studies the ground and rocks. finds special metals.

Education	teachers librarians	school	teaches children. looks after books. helps children find information.
Energy	engineer	wind farm	makes sure the wind turbines turn well and make electricity.

1 Listen and read. What jobs do these people do?

استمع واقرأ. ما الوظائف التى يقوم بها هولاء الأشخاص؟

I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day, I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.

I'm a farmer. I grow oranges. All year, I look after the trees and I give them water and nutrients. Then, I pick the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the supermarket.



I'm a guide. I work in the tourism industry. People come to my country and it's my job to explain the history and tell the tourists lots of interesting stories.

I'm a geologist. I study the ground and the rocks under our feet. I study what is under the ground. I find special metals and think how we can take the metals out of the ground.

I'm an engineer. I make sure the wind turbines turn well and make electricity. The electricity we make goes to thousands of homes.

I'm a librarian. I work in a school library. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the information they need.

2 Listen again and answer: استمع مرة أخرى واجب:

1- Who works in a school?

A librarian.

2- Who works outside?

....

3- Who works on the sea?

....

4- Who grows food?

....

5- Who is a scientist?

....

6- Who works with wind turbines?

....

Help your child read and answer the questions. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

3 Write the words under the pictures: اكتب الكلمات تحت الصور

education - energy - farming - fishing - mining - tourism

1 
....

2 
....

3 
....

4 
....

5 
....

6 
education

4 Look and write. Which industry are the words connected to? Can you add more words to the table?

انظر واكتب اى من الكلمات ترتبط بالصناعة. هل يمكنك إضافة كلمات أخرى بالجدول؟

copper - animals - hotels - wave power - boats - wind farm - nets - transportation - tractor - iron - coal

mining	copper -
farming	
fishing	
tourism	
energy	

Help your child sort the words. ساعد طفلك فى تصنيف الكلمات.

Activities



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(children - find - library - after)

Ayman : Where do you work, Omar?

Omar : I work in a school (1) ....

Ayman : What do you do there?

Omar : I look (2) .... all the books

Ayman : Do yo help (3) .... in the library?

Omar : Yes, I help them (4) .... the information they need

2 Read and complete:

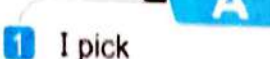
اقرأ وأكمل:

engineer - geologist - fisherman - farmer - industry

1. The guide works in the tourism ....
2. I grow oranges. I'm a ....
3. A .... studies the ground and the rocks.
4. An .... makes sure the wind turbines turn well.
5. The .... catches a lot of fish.

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:





A	B
1 I pick	a lots of interesting stories.
2 I sell my	b and catch fish.
3 I go on boat	c make electricity.
4 I tell the tourists	d fish in the market.
	e the fruit.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read and complete: اقرأ وأكمل

farming - geologist - librarian - mining - fisherman

1. I'm an engineer. I work in the ……… industry.
2. I'm a ……… . I find special metals.
3. He's a ……… . He catches fish.
4. I'm a farmer. I work in the ……… industry.
5. I buy lots of new books. I'm a ……… .

5 Rearrange the following to make sentences:



1. looks - The - after - farmer - trees - the.
2. sell - my - in - I - fish - the market.
3. study - I - and - the rocks - the ground.
4. in - The - the school - works - librarian - library.

6 Look and complete: انظر وأكمل



1. A ……… catches fish.



2. I ……… the fruit.



3. I'm a ……… .



4. The ……… looks after vegetables and fruit.

Lesson 2

★ CLIL: Social Studies

Vocabulary

industry	صناعة	cook	طباخ (طاهي)
economy	اقتصاد	local businesses	الشركات المحلية
salary	راتب	transportation	مواصلات
government	حكومة	roads	طرق
tourism	سياحة	community	مجتمع
tourists	سائحون	customer	زبون
hotel	فندق	company	شركة
taxi	تاكسى	patient	صبور
electrician	كهربائى (فنى)	confusing	مُربك / مُحير
plumber	سباك	badly	بشكل سيئ
cleaner	عامل نظافة	traffic light	اشارة مرور

Verbs أفعال

Present		Past simple
make	يصنع	made
buy	يشترى	bought
sell	يبيع	sold
divide	يُقسم	divided
arrive	يصل	arrived
pay	يدفع (مال)	paid

Present		Past simple
relax	يستريح	relaxed
deliver	يوصل	delivered
grow	يزرع	grew
teach	يدرس	taught
stop	يتوقف	stopped

Help your child learn new words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

Definitions تعريفات

economy	اقتصاد	the way a country makes and uses money.
industry	صناعة	a collection of businesses that work together.
salary	راتب	money paid to people who work.
government	حكومة	the group of people who makes rules for the country.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

The present simple

1 Form التكوين

I / We / You / They + inf.
He / She / It + verb + s / es / ies

- They are fishermen. They catch fish.
- She is a teacher. She teaches math.

◉ نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن حقائق وعادات وافعال متكررة.



I / We / You / They + don't + inf
He / She / It + doesn't + inf.

- We don't have a car.
- He doesn't grow tomatoes.



Do + you / they + inf?
Does + he / she / it + inf?

- Do you make your bed?
  - Yes, I do. :إجابة فى الاثبات   - No, I don't. :إجابة فى النفى
- Does she walk to school?
  - Yes, she does. :إجابة فى الاثبات   - No, she doesn't. :إجابة فى النفى

Help your child learn about the present simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن زمن المضارع البسيط.

2 لاحظ هناك بعض الافعال يمكن أن تحول إلى أسماء بإضافة (er) أو (or).

teach	يدرس	→	teacher	مدرس
build	يبنى	→	builder	عامل بناء
clean	ينظف	→	cleaner	عامل نظافة
collect garbage	يجمع قمامة	→	garbage collector	جامع قمامة

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (e) اضف (r) فقط.

drive	يقود	→	driver	قائد / سائق

- وهناك افعال نضيف إليها (er) بالإضافة إلى كلمات أخرى.

fish	يصطاد	→	fisherman	صياد

3 وهناك أسماء آخرى غير مشتقة من افعال فمثلاً (doctor) طبيب إذا حذفنا (or) فإن (doct) لا تعطى معنى لكن لاحظ أن:

builder	عامل بناء	← er	build	يبنى

- وهكذا فإن (mechanic - electrician - dentist) غير مشتقة من أفعال.

1 Think and answer: فكر واجب:

- How many people work in a hotel? كم شخص يعمل فى فندق؟

- What are their jobs? ما هى وظائفهم؟



2 Read and check your answers: اقرأ وتأكد من اجابتك:

Industry

The things we make, buy, and sell are all part of the country's economy. Our economy is divided into industries, such as fishing, farming, tourism, etc.

In every industry there are thousands of people and many different jobs. For example, let's think about the tourism industry in Egypt.

When tourists arrive in Egypt they need a hotel and they need a bus or a taxi to take them to the hotel.

Many people work in the hotel. The hotel needs electricians and plumbers to fix problems, cooks to make food, and cleaners to keep the hotel clean.

Help your child read about industries and answer the questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الصناعات ويجيب عن الاسئلة.

2 لاحظ هناك بعض الافعال يمكن أن تحول إلى أسماء بإضافة (er) أو (or).

teach	يدرس	→	teacher	مدرس
build	يبنى	→	builder	عامل بناء
clean	ينظف	→	cleaner	عامل نظافة
collect garbage	يجمع قمامة	→	garbage collector	جامع قمامة

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (e) أضف (r) فقط.

drive	يقود	→	driver	قائد / سائق

- وهناك افعال نضيف إليها (er) بالإضافة إلى كلمات أخرى.

fish	يصطاد	→	fisherman	صياد

3 وهناك أسماء أخرى غير مشتقة من افعال فمثلاً (doctor) طبيب إذا حذفنا (or) فإن (doct) لا تعطى معنى لكن لاحظ أن:

builder	عامل بناء	←er	build	يبنى

- وهكذا فإن (mechanic - electrician - dentist) غير مشتقة من أفعال.

1 Think and answer: فكر واجب:

- How many people work in a hotel? كم شخص يعمل فى فندق؟

- What are their jobs? ما هى وظائفهم؟



2 Read and check your answers: اقرأ وتأكد من اجابتك:

Industry

The things we make, buy, and sell are all part of the country's economy. Our economy is divided into industries, such as fishing, farming, tourism, etc.
In every industry there are thousands of people and many different jobs. For example, let's think about the tourism industry in Egypt.
When tourists arrive in Egypt they need a hotel and they need a bus or a taxi to take them to the hotel.
Many people work in the hotel. The hotel needs electricians and plumbers to fix problems, cooks to make food, and cleaners to keep the hotel clean.

Help your child read about industries and answer the questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الصناعات ويجيب عن الاسئلة.

Local businesses need the hotel, too. For example, the hotel buys food from farmers.
Everything in the hotel comes from other businesses. The hotel pays a salary to the workers. The workers use their salary to buy food, clothes, and transportation. Some of their salary goes to the government to pay for things like roads and schools. When we work, our salary helps our community and the whole country.



3 Match the words to the meaning:

صل الكلمات بمعانيها .



- a. economy
- b. industry
- c. salary
- d. government



1. money paid to people who work
2. a collection of businesses that work together
3. the group of people who make rules for the country
4. the way a country makes and uses money



Think!

Why do people work? Read and check (✓) or cross (✗)

لماذا يعمل الناس؟ اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (✗)

- They get a salary.
- They can help people.
- They can relax.
- They can make things.

What other reasons are there for working? Discuss with a partner.

ما الأسباب الأخرى للعمل؟ ناقش مع زميلك؟



Help your child match the words to the meaning. ساعد طفلك أن يصل الكلمات بالمعنى.

4 Think about these industries. Choose the best verb:

فكر فى الصناعات واختر افضل فعل :

buy - deliver - eat - grow - sell (x 2) - make (x2) - catch

1. Farmers ....grow..... the food.
2. Drivers .... the food.
3. Supermarkets .... the food to customers.
4. Customers .... the food and then .... the food.
5. Engineers .... the wind turbines.
6. The wind turbines .... electricity.
7. Fishermen .... the fish.
8. The markets .... the fish to stores.



5 Complete the sentences. Then circle the verbs:

اكمل الجمل. ضع دائرة حول الأفعال بعد الإجابة :

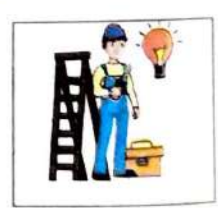
1. My ....teacher... is very patient. She ....teaches.. math. (teach)
2. That taxi .... very badly. He didn't stop at a traffic light. (drive)
3. Those .... are in the wrong place. They cannot .... there. (fish)
4. This is the .... who ....our house. (build)
5. He .... very well. Thank the .... when you see him. (clean)

6 Describe what these people do. You can use the words in the box to help you:

صف ماذا يعمل الاشخاص. يمكن أن نستخدم الكلمات فى الاطار :

build - clean - drive - catch fish - fix - help (x2) - teach



A builder builds houses. ....






....

Read, listen, and say: اقرأ واستمع وقل

Can you tell me why ... ?



Can you tell me why ....

Builders build,

But doctors don't doct. They help sick people?





Can you tell me why ....

Teachers teach,

But mechanics don't mechanic. They fix cars?



Can you tell me why ....

Fishermen fish,

But electricians don't electric. They connect electricity?





Can you tell me why ....

Drivers drive and cleaners clean,

But dentists don't dentist. They fix teeth?

Ah, but wait!

Garbage collectors collect garbage.

Yes, it's very confusing, but that's what makes English great!



Activities



1 Read and complete:



اقرأ واكمل:





❶ She's a ....

❷ The wind turbines .... electricity.



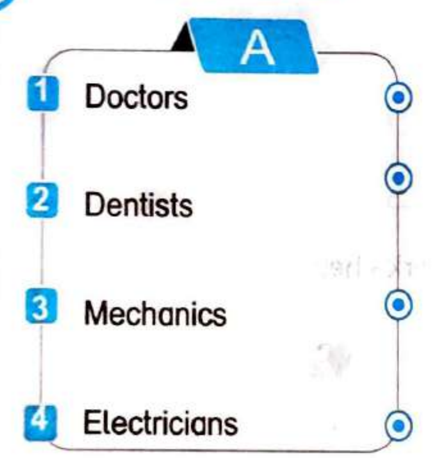


❸ A .... makes food.

❹ A .... helps sick people.

2 Read and match:

أقراء وصل:



A	B
1 Doctors	a. fix cars.
2 Dentists	b. connect electricity.
3 Mechanics	c. build houses.
4 Electricians	d. fix teeth.
	e. help sick people.

3 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

In every industry there are thousands of people and different jobs. For example, let's think about the education industry.

Teachers, librarians, cleaners and bus drivers get salaries to buy food, clothes and for transportation. Some of their salary goes to the government to pay for things like roads and schools.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Who works in the education industry ?
2. Why do people get salaries?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 There are different jobs in every industry.		
4 The government doesn't need the people's salaries.		

4 Read and complete:

انظر واكمل:

clean - deliver - hotels - salary - jobs

1. Tourists need .... in Egypt.
2. In every industry, there are many different ....
3. The markets .... the fish to stores.
4. The cleaners .... very well.
5. The hotel pays a .... to the workers.

5 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

tourism - tourists - hotels - work - help

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الوحدة

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

Lesson 3

★ CLIL: Science

Vocabulary


cut down يقطع


mango مانجو


money نقود

Non-renewable غير متجدد


gas غاز


oil بترول


coal فحم

Energy Sources
مصادر الطاقة

Renewable متجدد


wave energy طاقة الأمواج


solar energy طاقة شمسية


wind energy طاقة الرياح


wind farms
مزارع لطاقة الرياح


solar farm
مزارع للطاقة الشمسية

Help your child learn about energy sources. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن مصادر الطاقة.

Verbs الأفعال

Present		Past simple
have	يملك	had
play	يلعب	played
grow	ينمو	grew
burn	يحرق	burnt

Present		Past simple
eat	يأكل	ate
sell	يبيع	sold
give	يعطى	gave

Other words كلمات أخرى

everywhere	فى كل مكان
space	مساحة
km²	كيلو متر مربع
sunshine	سطوع الشمس
wood	خشب
advantage	ميزة
TWh	تيرا وات فى الساعة (قياس كمية الكهرباء)
cause pollution	تسبب تلوث
Ras Ghareb Wind Farm	مزرعة رياح رأس غارب
Benban Solar Park	محطة بنبان للطاقة الشمسية (فى أسوان)
decision	قرار

Study the following

- ندرس فى هذا الدرس المصادر المتجددة وغير المتجددة للطاقة

1. المصادر المتجددة (Renewable resources) هى المصادر التى لا تنتهى والموجودة دائماً.
2. المصادر غير المتجددة (Non-renewable resources) هى المصادر التى ستنتهى بالتأكيد لأننا نستخدمها وسوف تنفذ:

Renewable متجددة		Non-renewable غير متجددة	
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	oil	بترول
wave energy	طاقة الأمواج	coal	فحم
solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	gas	غاز

- ندرس أيضا أن الطاقة المتجددة أفضل من الطاقة غير المتجددة، وذلك لأن الطاقة المتجددة لا تسبب التلوث. حيث نحتاج إلى حرق المصادر غير المتجددة للحصول على طاقة. لكن المصادر المتجددة لا تحتاج للحرق لذلك لا تسبب التلوث.

When we burn non-renewable resources to make electricity, we also cause pollution.

We don't need to burn renewable resources so there is no pollution.

1 Look at the pictures. What do you think the story is about?

انظر للصور. ماذا تعتقد أن القصة تدور حول؟

2 Read. Is a mango tree renewable or non-renewable?

اقرأ. هل شجرة المانجو مصدر متجدد أو غير متجدد؟

Two mango trees

Sara and Malak are sisters. Each sister had a beautiful mango tree next to her house. Every year, the sisters ate beautiful mangoes. Their children played under the trees.

One day, Malak said, "I don't need mangoes. I need money. Let's cut down my tree. I can sell the wood."

She cut the tree and she sold the wood. Malak was happy.

Next year, Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave Sara more mangoes.

Malak looked out of the window. There was no mango tree. She had no mangoes and no more wood.

"Don't worry," said Sara. "Plant this mango seed, and it will grow into a big tree."

3 Read again and answer the questions:

اقرأ مرة أخرى واجب عن الأسئلة:

1. Why does Malak cut down the mango tree?

---

2. What are the advantages of cutting down the mango tree?

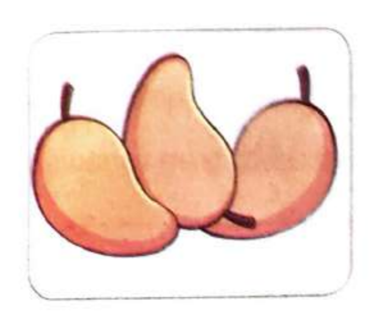
---

3. What do you think about Malak's decision? Was it a good or a bad decision?

---

4. Would you cut the mango tree?

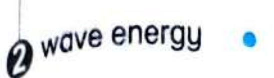




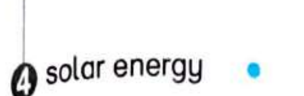
4 **We make electricity from energy sources. Match the energy sources to the pictures:**

نولد الكهرباء من مصادر الطاقة . صل مصدر الطاقة بالصور.


1. oil •


2. wave energy •


3. coal •


4. solar energy •

5. wind energy •


6. gas •


a


b


c


d


e


f

5 **Write each energy source in the table:**

اكتب كل مصدر للطاقة وصنفه في الجدول الآتي:

Renewable متجدد	Non-renewable غير متجدد

6 Look and read. What non-renewable and renewable resources does the article talk about?

انظر واقرأ. ما مصادر الطاقة المتجددة وغير المتجددة الموجودة بالمقال؟

Different energy resources



We are using more and more electricity. We can make electricity from many different energy resources. Today, 80% of electricity comes from non-renewable resources. These are coal, gas, and oil.

Why is that a problem?

We take coal, oil, and gas from the Earth, but we cannot make more. When we burn non-renewable resources to make electricity, we also cause pollution.

How can we use renewable resources?

Renewable energy sources are everywhere. We can make electricity from wind, water, and the the sun. We do not need to burn these resources, so there is no pollution.



To make electricity from renewable energy sources, we need new solar farms and wind farms. A solar farm needs a lot of sunshine. A wind farm needs a big space. To make wave energy, you need the sea.

7 Read again and discuss :

اقرأ مرة أخرى وناقش:

1. What are the problems with coal, oil, and gas?

---

2. Is Egypt a good place to find renewable energy sources? Why?

---

3. Do you think the electricity from renewable sources and non-renewable sources is different?

---

8 **Read and find out about these two renewable energy projects. Complete the fact file for Ras Ghareb Wind Farm**

اقرأ واكتشف معلومات عن اثنان من مشاريع الطاقة المتجددة. أكمل ملف الحقائق عن مزرعة رأس غارب للرياح

Energy project fact file:

Benban Solar Park

Where is it?	Benban, Aswan, Egypt
How old is it?	Opened in 2018
How big is it?	37.2 km^2
How much electricity can it make?	3.8 TWh per year

Ras Ghareb Wind Farm

Where is it? Ras Ghareb - The Red Sea
How old is it? Opened in 2019
How big is it? 100 km^2
How much electricity can it make? 262.5 MWh per year



1. Which project is newer? ما المشروع الاحدث؟ ....

....

2. Which project is bigger? ما المشروع الاكبر؟ ....

....

3. Which project can make more electricity? ما المشروع الذى ينتج كهرباء اكثر؟

....



- وحدة قياس الكهرباء هي الواط:
- الميجا واط = مليون واط
- TWh = تيرا واط/ ساعة
- التيرا واط = مليون ميجا وات
- MWh = ميجا واط/ ساعة

Activities



1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 Malak cut down	a. grew bigger and bigger.
2 Sara's mango tree needs	b. needs a lot of sunshine.
3 A solar farm	c. needs a big space.
4 A wind farm	d. a lot of water.
	e. the tree to get wood.

1 Look and complete: انظر واكمل:



1. Sara has a .... tree.



2. .... is non-renewable resource.



3. We can make electricity from .... farms.



4. .... energy needs the sea.

2 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. can - We - from- make - electricity - wind.

- -

2. energy - Non-renewable - resources - pollution - cause.

- -

3. needs - **A solar** - a lot of - farm - sunshine.

4. farm - **A wind** - a big - needs - space.

3 Read and compelet:

اقرأ واكمل:

Earth - pollution - energy - sources - non-renewable

1. Coal, oil and gas are .... energy sources.
2. Renewable energy .... are everywhere.
3. We take coal, oil and gas from the ....
4. Renewable energy resources don't cause ....
5. We need the sea to make wave ....

4 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

important - sources - produce - the wind - renewable



Lesson 4

★ A short story
Pronunciation & Math

Vocabulary


fresh fish van
شاحنة سمك طازج


fisherman صياد


grandpa جد


village قرية

A short story
قصة قصيرة


sad حزين


disappointed مُحبط


10 عشرة


engine* محرك


van شاحنة


fish سمكة


sun الشمس



Help your child know new words.
ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كلمات جديدة.

Verbs افعال

have fun	يستمتع بوقته	get	يحصل على
shout	يصيح	hear (heard)	يسمع
skim	يقرأ سريعًا (يتصفح)		

Other words كلمات أخرى

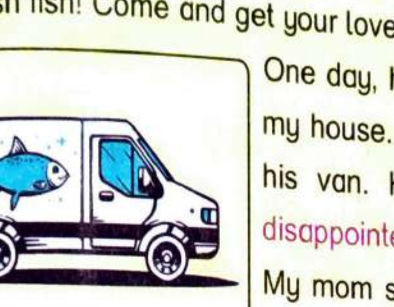
in front of	أمام	problem	مشكلة
opinion	رأى		

1 Skim the story quickly. Who are the main characters?

تصفح القصة سريعا؟ من هم الشخصيات الرئيسية؟

Fresh fish van

There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village in an old van. He likes his job. He has fun. He shouts, "Fish! Fresh fish! Come and get your lovely fresh fish".



One day, he was in front of my house. He couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed.

My mom saw the man. It was hot in the sun. She wanted to help.

Mom's dad (my grandpa) was a mechanic. He taught her all about cars. She looked at the old van's engine.

"It is a very simple problem. I can fix it," said Mom. The old fisherman was surprised.

Then, we heard the sound of the engine. His van was fixed!

"Thank you," the fisherman said. He gave Mom ten fresh fish.

2 How much do you remember? Answer. Then read and check

كم مقدار ما تتذكره؟ أجب. ثم اقرأ وتأكد

1. What does the old man sell? He sells ....
2. Why was the old man sad and disappointed?
   Because he couldn't ....
   ....
3. Why do you think the old man was surprised? Because ....

صل واكتب :

3 Match and write:

fish - sun - ten - van

❶ ❷ ❸ ❹

....

4 Read the story again and answer. Use the words in Exercise 4 :

اقرأ القصة مرة أخرى واجب. استخدم الكلمات من تمرين ٤ :

1. What is hot?

The sun.

2. What does the old man drive?

----

3. What does the old man sell?

----

4. How many fish does the old man give mom?

----

5 Read again and put a ✓or ✗:

اقرأ مرة أخرى وضع علامة ✓ أو ✗ :

	True	False
❶ The fisherman couldn't start his van.		
❷ He drives a bus.		
❸ He sells fresh fish.		
❹ He gave mom five fresh fish.		



Listen and say: استمع وقل



ندرس فى هذا الدرس الصوت (/i/) و (/e/) ونلاحظ الفرق بينهما كما فى كلمتى ten و fish وكلمتى ten / tin حيث نلاحظ فى نطق (tin) أن (in) تنطق مثل كلمة (in) بمعنى فى لكن (en) تنطق مثل (en) فى (pen).

ندرس أيضا الصوت /æ/ و /ʌ/ والفرق بينهما كما فى الكلمتين van و sun حيث تشبه كلمة van نطق كلمة man وكلمة sun تشبه نطق كلمة bus.

وندرس أيضا بادئة الكلمات (dis) والتى تعطى معنى النفى.

Verbs افعال

disagree	لا يوافق	disappointed	محبط
disappeared	مختفى	dislike	لا يحب
disobey	لا يطيع		

1 Find more words in with the same sound

جد كلمات أخرى بنفس الصوت

sun	van	fish	ten
bus	man	fin	pen
....	....	....	....
....	....	....	....

2 Look and write. Complete the sentences: انظر واكتب- أكمل الجمل

disagree - disappeared - disappointed - dislikes - disobeyed



1 The boy is .... He didn't pass the test.

2 She .... ice cream.



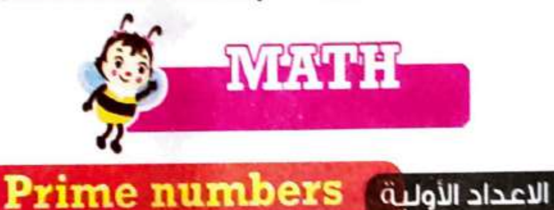
3 These friends ....



4 I'm sorry because I .... my mom.



5 The rabbit .... from the hat.



Prime numbers الاعداد الأولية

- A prime number is a number you can divide only by itself and 1, e.g. 2, 3, 5, etc.

ندرس فى هذا الدرس العدد الأولى وهو العدد الذى يقبل القسمة على نفسه وعلى الواحد مثل.

2 , 3 , 5 , 7 , 11 ....



- العدد ٤ ليس عدد أولى لأنه يقبل القسمة على نفسه وعلى الواحد وعلى رقم ٢.

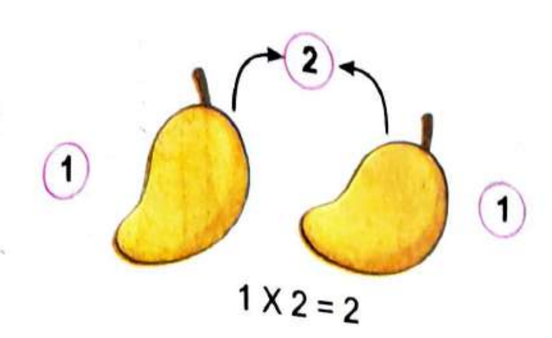
العدد ٩ غير أولى لأنه يقبل القسمة على نفسه وعلى الواحد وعلى ٣

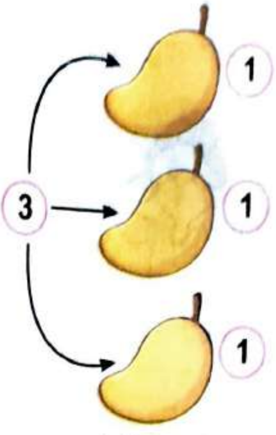
- لاحظ الأعداد الأولية من 1 - 100

(2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29, 31, 37, 41, 43, 47, 53, 59, 61, 67, 71, 73, 79, 83, 89, 97)

1 Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:





2 Circle the prime numbers:

ضع دائرة حول الرقم الأولى:

10 12 3 89 43

5 9 37 4 13

3 Add these numbers. If the answer is a prime number write it in red:

اجمع الآتى وإذا كان الناتج عدد أولى اكتبه بالأحمر:

1. 6 + 7 = ...
2. 37 + 20 = ...
3. 70 + 9 = ...
4. 40 + 4 = ...

Find out

Circle the smallest prime numbers:

2, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 23 and 29.

Is number 1 a prime number or not?

Activities



1 Read and match: اقرأ وطابق:

A

1. The fisherman sells
2. She fixed
3. The fisherman gave
4. She dislikes

B

a. the old van's engine
b. ice cream.
c. mom ten fresh fish.
d. fish around the village.
e. pass the test.

2 Read and complete: اقرأ وأكمل:

disagree - disappointed - engine - sell - disappeared

1. The rabbit .... from the hat.
2. What does the old man .... ?
3. Nabil was sad and ....
4. We heard the sound of the ....
5. I always ask them to play with me but they ....

3 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. didn't - He - the - test - pass.

....

2. dislikes - She - ice cream.

....

3. old - The - fisherman - surprised - was.

....

4. gave - He - Mom - fresh - ten - fish.

....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Look and complete:

انظر وأكمل:



1 You can have fun in the ....



2 This is a ....



3 He sells ....



4 She fixes the old ....

5 Add and circle the prime numbers:

اجمع وضع دائرة حول العدد اذا كان اولى:

1 6 + 7 = (13)

2 37 + 20 = ...

3 70 + 9 = ...

4 40 + 4 = ...

5 10 + 7 = ...

6 23 + 20 = ...

7 32 + 28 = ...

8 29 + 50 = ...

6 Circle the prime numbers :

اضع دائرة حول الرقم الأولى:

4 7 9 23 47 51

55 67 71 75 83 97



★ Do you want to be a teacher?



Vocabulary

quick	بسرعة	teacher	مدرسة / مدرس
patient	صبور	world	العالم
ready	جاهز	different	مختلف
student	طالب	hard work	عمل شاق
adult	شخص بالغ	life	حياة
polite	مهذب	show respect	يظهر الاحترام
special	خاص	favourite	مفضل
hair	شعر	skin	جلد
advice	نصيحة	dentist	طبيب أسنان
immediately	حالاً / فورًا	surprising questions	أسئلة مفاجأة
rich	غني	job	وظيفة
poor	فقير	color	لون

Verbs أفعال

Present		Past simple
ask	يسأل	asked
answer	يجيب	answered
encourage	يشجع	encouraged
learn	يتعلم	learnt
know	يعرف	knew
respect	يحترم	respected

Present		Past simple
think	يفكر	thought
change	يغير	changed
teach	يعلم	taught
remember	يتذكر	remembered
get off	ينزل من	got off

1 Think and answer

فكر وأجب:

1. Do you want to be a teacher? Why?

2. What are the good and bad things about being a teacher?

Is teaching the best job in the world?

When people ask me, 'What do you want to do?'
I answer: 'I want to be a teacher. For me, it's the best job in the world.'
For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A teacher can change their students' lives.



A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers. Everyone in the class knows different things.

Every adult remembers a special teacher. Ask your parents. Did they have a favorite teacher? Why was that teacher special?

2 Think and answer. Work with a partner. Answer the questions:

فكر واجب:

1. Why does the writer want to be a teacher? Write three reasons.

-لماذا يريد الكاتب أن يصبح مدرس / مدرسة؟ اكتب ثلاثة اسباب:

2. Why did the writer write this essay مقال?

-لماذا كتب الكاتب المقال؟

3. Is being a teacher a hard job? Why?

-هل وظيفة المدرس صعبة؟ لماذا؟

3 Read the poster. Do you agree or disagree?

اقرأ البوستر، هل تتفق أم تختلف؟



I respect the cleaner.
I don't throw litter.



I respect the teacher.
I listen to him carefully.

I show respect to the people around me.

I respect the bus driver. I say thank you when I get off the bus.



I respect the dentist.
I listen to her advice.



When you show respect, you are kind and polite. You talk to someone in the same way you want them to talk to you.
We show everyone respect. We show respect to younger people. We show respect to older people. We show respect to men and women. We show respect to rich and poor people.

Activities



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الاقواس:

(exciting - work - maths - patient)

Khalid : Do you like your teachers?

Mahmoud : Yes, I like Mr Hossam the ❶ .... teacher.

Khalid : Why do you like him?

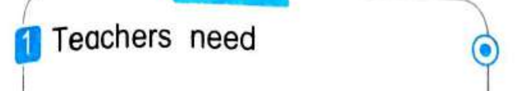
Mahmoud : He is very ❷ .... and encourages us

Khalid : Is being a teacher a hard ❸ ....?

Mahmoud : Yes, but it's ❹ ...., too.

2 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 Teachers need	a. their students.
2 Teachers encourage	b. change their students' lives.
3 A teacher can	c. very patient.
4 Teachers need to be	d. to think quickly.
	e. very angry.

3 Read and complete:

اقرأ واكمل:

litter - polite - respect - get off - carefully

1. We show .... to younger and older people.
2. I listen to the teacher ....
3. You should be kind and ....
4. I don't throw ....
5. I say thank you to the bus driver when I .... the bus.

4 Read and complete:

اقرأ واكمل:





❶ A .... fixes cars.

❷ A .... looks after our teeth.





❸ I respect the ....

❹ The .... cleans our school.

5 Rearrange the following to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. to do - What - you - want - do?

- -

2. questions - surprising - Students - ask - always.

- -

3. fix - The - for - electricians - things - people.

- -

4. hours - every - Teachers - day - work - for - many.

- -

6 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

teacher - works - school - hard - exciting



- -

- -

- -

- -

- -



Review



Fishing صيد السمك





catch fish يصطاد سمك | net شبكة | fisherman صياد سمك | boat قارب

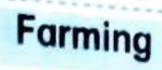
Tourism industry صناعة السياحة






tourism سياحة | guide مرشد سياحى | hotel فندق | transportation المواصلات

Farming الزراعة








farmer فلاح | tractor جرار | pick يقطف

Mining التعدين






geologist جيولوجى | copper نحاس | coal فحم | iron حديد | engineer مهندس

Farming التعليم





school مدرسة | teacher مدرسة | librarian أمينة مكتبة

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السادسة.

Help your child revise Unit 6.



Energy الطاقة






wave power طاقة الأمواج | wind turbines توربينات الرياح | wind farm مزرعة لطاقة الرياح

Energy Sources مصادر الطاقة





wave energy طاقة الأمواج | solar energy طاقة شمسية | wind farms مزارع لطاقة الرياح | wind energy طاقة الرياح





oil بترول | coal فحم | gas غاز

A short story قصة قصيرة



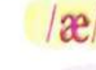



fisherman صياد | grandpa جد | fish سمكة

10 عشرة | van شاحنة | engine محرك

Pronunciation







/i/ fish سمكة | /e/ ten عشرة | /æ/ van شاحنة | /ʌ/ sun الشمس



Grammar قواعد لغوية

The present simple

1 Form التكوين

I / We / You / They + inf.
He / She / It + verb + s / es / ies

- They catch fish.
- She teaches English.

• نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن حقائق وعادات وأفعال متكررة.

---

2 Negative للنفى

I / We / You / They + don't + inf.
He / She / It + doesn't + inf.

- We don't like ice cream.
- He doesn't want to be a fisherman.

---

3 Question السؤال

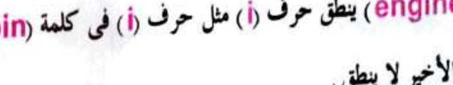
Do + you / they + inf?
Does + he / she / it + inf?

- Do you make your bed?
- Yes, I do. :إجابة فى الاثبات — - No, I don't. :إجابة فى النفى
- Does she walk to school?
- Yes, she does. :إجابة فى الاثبات — - No, she doesn't. :إجابة فى النفى

ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات



1. انطق كلمة (guide) مثل كلمة (ride) مع اختلاف أول صوت.
2. لنطق كلمة (turbine) ينطق (ur) مثل (ir) فى كلمة (girl) والمقطع (bine) حرف (i) ينطق مثل (o) فى كلمة (second) وحرف (e) لا ينطق.
3. لنطق كلمة (iron) ينطق حرف (i) مثل حرف (y) في كلمة (my) وحرف (o) ينطق كما فى كلمة (second)
4. لنطق كلمة (engine) ينطق حرف (i) مثل حرف (i) فى كلمة (bin)



وحرف (e) الأخير لا ينطق.



مهارات الكتابة

Look and write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences

important - sources - produce- the wind - renewable



1 Electricity is very important in our life. We make it from different sources. We can produce it from the wind and the sun. These are renewable sources. They are good energy sources.

tourism - tourists - hotels - work - help



2 Tourism is very important. Tourists need to stay in hotels. They need a bus or a taxi to take them to hotels. Many people work in the tourism industry.Tourism helps our country.

teacher - works - school - hard - exciting



3 My mother is a teacher. My mother works for many hours at school every day. It's hard work. But it's exciting. She loves her students vey much.

Activity 7 on Unit (6)

1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(parents - carefully - polite - respect)

Ahmed : Do you ❶ .... people around you?

Youssef : Yes, I should be ❷ ....

Ahmed : Who teaches you to respect people?

Youssef : My ❸ .... teach me.

Ahmed : How do you show respect to your teacher?

Youssef : I listen to him ❹ ....

2 Look and complete:

انظر واكمل:



❶ She is a ....



❷ These are .... turbines.



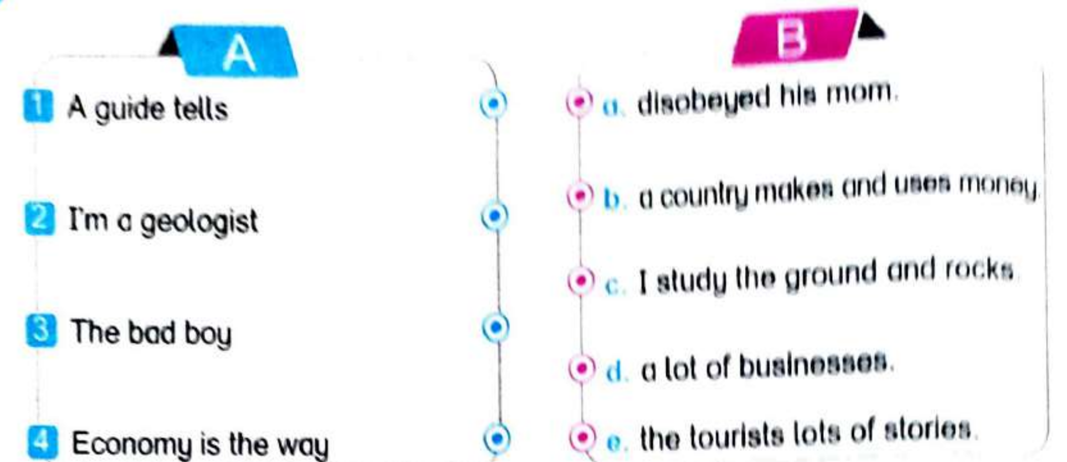
❸ I'm a .... I work in the tourism industry.

❹ The .... is a non-renewable energy source.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 A guide tells	a. disobeyed his mom.
2 I'm a geologist	b. a country makes and uses money
3 The bad boy	c. I study the ground and rocks.
4 Economy is the way	d. a lot of businesses.
	e. the tourists lots of stories.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Do you want to be a teacher? Why? I think teaching is the best job in the world. A good teacher is very patient, helpful and kind. The teacher needs to think quickly and encourages his children. He/ She never gets angry. He/She should listen to his/ her children. When we become adults, we always remember a special teacher.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Who should the teacher listen to?

----

2. What does the teacher need to do?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 We forget our special teachers when we are adults.		
4 A good teacher never gets angry.		

5 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Gas is .... energy.
   a solar   b renewable   c non-renewable
2. My .... is very patient.
   a teaches   b teach   c teacher
3. A .... looks after our teeth.
   a dentist   b farmer   c driver

4. A/An .... is the money paid to people who work.

a) salary b) industry c) economy

5. The geologist studies the ground and ....

a) turbines b) rocks c) energy

6 Read and complete: اقرأ ثم أكمل:

renewable - catch - deliver - grow - electricity

1. Farmers .... the food.
2. The wind turbines make ....
3. Fishermen .... fish.
4. Drivers .... the food.
5. The sun is a .... energy source.

7 Rearrange the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. people - Doctors - sick - help.

---

2. make sure - turn - I - the turbines - well.

---

3. can - Tourists - in - relax - hotels.

---

4. go out - boat - I - catch - on my - and - fish.

---

8 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

fisherman - catch - fish - sell - the market



Objectives of Review 2

أهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1 **Listening and speaking**

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 4 - 6.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجوده بالوحدات ٤-٦.

Lesson 2 **Phonics and Assessment**

1. To revise the key letter sounds from Units 4 - 6.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ٤-٦.

2. To evaluate progress in Units 4- 6.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ فى استيعاب الوحدات من ٤ الى٦.

Review 2

★ Units 4 - 5 & 6

1 Read and play a memory game: اقرأ والعب لعبة الذاكرة:

1- Draw the table in your notebook.

2- Look at the pictures for one minute.

3- Close your books.

4- Write or draw as many of the words as you can.

5- Check with your partner.

Start



1- .... 2- .... 3- ....

4- .... 5- .... 6- ....

7- .... 8- .... 9- ....

10- .... 11- .... 12- ....

13- .... 14- .... 15- ....

Finish

2 Now write the words: الأن اكتب الكلمات:

Review 2

3 Look and correct the sentences: انظر وصحح الجمل،

Hospital	School	Green street	Post office	Office
Supermarket		Shopping mall	Museum	

Park

1. The hospital is between the school.

....

2. The school is next to the museum.

....

3. The park is under the shopping mall.

....

4. The supermarket is behind the school.

....

4 Now write three more sentences about the map:

اكتب ثلاثة جمل اضافية عن الخريطة :

1 - ....

2 - ....

3 - ....

Lesson 2

★ Units 4 - 5 & 6

1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions:

انظر للصور وأجب عن الاسئلة :









1. What's the mechanic doing? ....

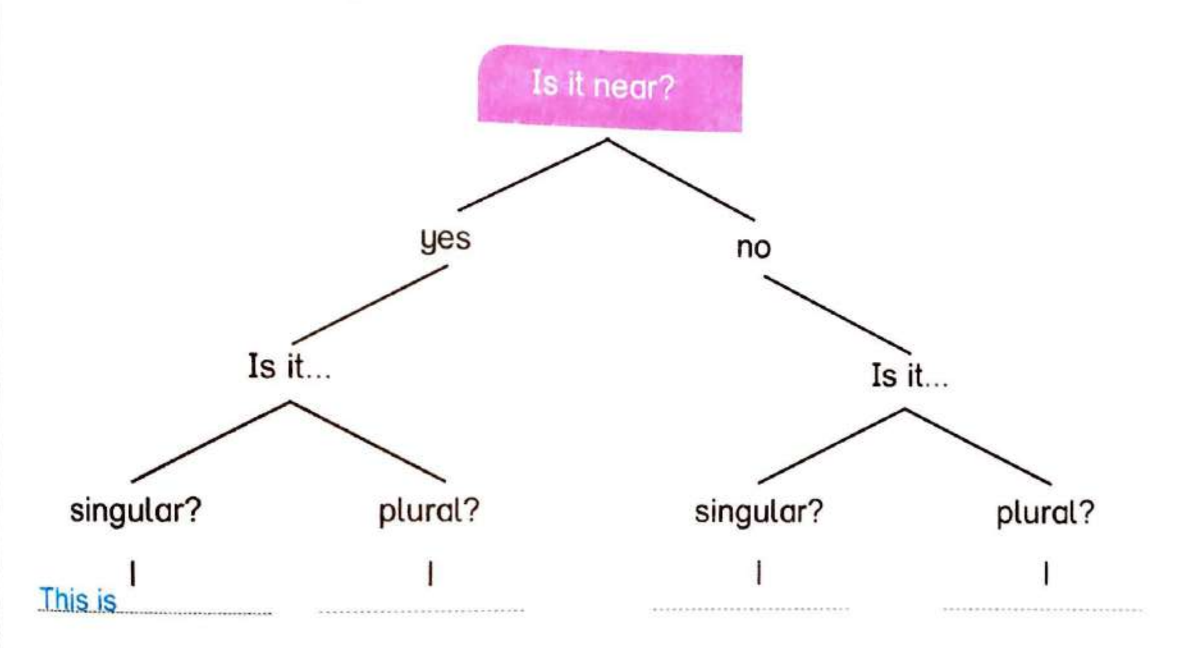
2. What's the mail carrier doing? ....

3. What's the electrician doing? ....

4. What's the driver doing? ....

2 Look and complete: انظر واكمل :

Do you know when to use This is, That is, These are, or Those are?



3 **Match the sentences to the picture. Then write this is, that is, these are, or those are:** صل الجمل بالصور،

1. .... a screwdriver.
2. .... my tape measure.
3. .... our tools.
4. .... my tools.

a b c 1 d

4 **Look at the information. Write one short pros paragraph and one short cons paragraph:** انظر إلى المعلومات واكتب فقرة تعبيرية قصيرة عن المميزات وفقرة قصيرة عن العيوب،

pros of solar panels	cons of solar panels
good for the environment	only works during the day
can use it for man years	making panels causes pollution
Egypt has a lot of sun!	expensive to make

Our modern world needs a lot of electricity. In the past we used oil, gas, and coal to make electricity. But now we are using more and more solar power.

On the one hand ...

....

....

....

On the other hand ...

....

....

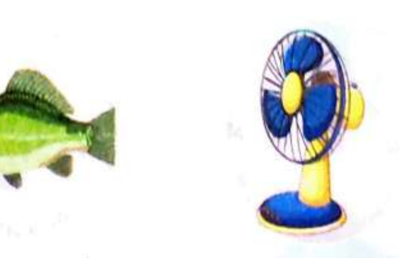
....

PRONUNCIATION

5 Underline the stressed syllables in these jobs: ضع خط تحت المقطع المشدد فى الوظائف الاتية،

1- doctor
2- plumber
3- builder
4- driver
5- teacher
6- mechanic

6 Point and say. Then write these words: اشر وقل ثم اكتب هذه الكلمات،





1 ....

2 ....

3 ....

4 ....

TERM 1 PROJECT

1 Read and think about the project: إقرأ ثم فكر فى عمل المشروع،

Think about what job you want to do when you're older. Think about how it helps the community. Write a message to yourself in the future.

2 Think about what you know and what you enjoy. Complete the diagram:

All about me

My favorite school subjects

Hobbies I enjoy

Industries I think are interesting

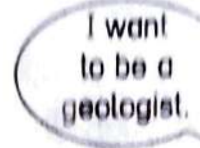
Review 2

3 Read, think, and complete:

اقرأ وفكر واكمل:

What do you want to be?	
What do you need to do this job? Think about: • Do you need to go to university? • Do you need to practice?	
Where does someone with this job work?	
How does this job help the community?	

4 Work in a group. Present your job:





5 Look, write, and complete. Write a message to yourself in the future:

انظر واكتب واكمل:

Dear ....

I will work in a .... I want to be a .... because

....

....

I need to .... to be a good ....

I will help people ....

I hope you think your job is interesting.

Lots of love,

....

Put the letter in an envelope and then put it somewhere safe.

Read it when you're older.

Activity 8 on Units (4,5 & 6)



1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(fantastic - living - apartment - room)

A : I look at our lovely ❶ .... !

B : It's ❷ .... !

A : Which is your favorite❸ .... ?

B : My favorite room is the ❹ .... room with the balcony.

2 Complete the sentences

أكمل الجمل:





❶ This is my .... room .



❷ My father is a .... driver.



❸ She .... ice cream.



❹ The .... is next to the car.

Review 2

3 Read and match:
اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 She's an	a. my aunt.
2 This is	b. cars.
3 The mechanics fix	c. old man sell?
4 What does the	d. electrician.
	e. come and get.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:
اقرأ الاتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed is a farmer. He grows oranges. All year, he looks after the trees and he gives them water and nutrients, Then he picks the fruit. Ahmed sends a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What does Ahmed do? --
2. What does Ahmed grow? --

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 Ahmed is a good teacher.		
4 Ahmed sends a lot of fruit to the hospital.		

5 Read and complete:
اقرأ ثم أكمل:

grow - socket - left - in - car

1. The hospital is .... front of the school.
2. I go to school by ....
3. Take the second ....
4. Never put anything into a ....
5. Farmers .... the food.

6 Choose the right answer from a, b or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Supermarkets .... the food to customers.
   a sell   b eat   c drink
2. Never .... anything electric with wet hands.
   a touches   b touched   c touch
3. .... are the plumber's tools.
   a That   b This   c Those
4. I'm a .... I catch fish.
   a guide   b fisherman   c farmer
5. A .... connects pipes.
   a driver   b plumber   c teacher

7 Rearrange the following to make sentences أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل:

1. the school - Samir - library - in- works.

---

2. people - Do - like - helping - you?

---

3. live - a city - Hurghada - I - called - in

---

4. rabbit - from - The - disappeared - the -hat.

---

8 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات:

mechanic - fix - cars - buses - repair shop

The Reader

In the Taxi with Uncle Sami

فى التاكسى مع العم سامى



Objectives of the Reader أهداف القصة

1. To read and understand a story.
١ - يقرأ التلميذ ويفهم قصة.

2. To enjoy reading in English.
٢ - يستمتع التلميذ بالقراءة باللغة الانجليزية.

3. To talk about the story characters.
٣ - يتكلم التلميذ عن شخصيات القصة.

4. To use context to guess the meaning of unfamiliar words in a story.
٤ - يستخدم التلميذ السياق ليخمن معني الكلمات غير المألوفة.

5. To identify how characters felt at different parts of a story.
٥ - يحدد التلميذ ما تشعر به الشخصيات فى أجزاء مختلفة من القصة.

6. To order the events in a story.
٦ - يرتب التلميذ احداث القصة.



Vocabulary

Characters of the Reader

شخصيات القصة



Mom الأم



Dad الأب



Zein زين



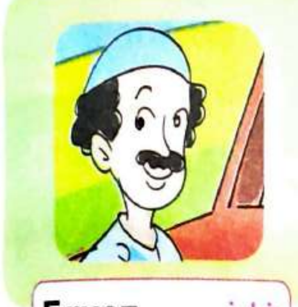
Zahra زهرة



uncle Sami العم سامي



Adel عادل



Fayez فايز



Mervat ميرفت



Faten فاتن

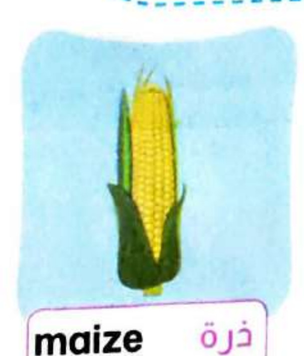


Basem باسم



Mr Sameh السيد سامح

Picture Dictionary


maize ذرة


Nature reserve محمية طبيعية


sink حوض


pipe ماسورة


tractor جرار


puzzle لعبة الغاز


hippo فرس النهر


vet طبيب بيطرى


doctor طبيب


dentist طبيب اسنان


taix driver سائق تاكسى


asleep نائم


crocodile تمساح


garbage قمامة

medicine دواء


ring خاتم

The Reader

القصة

Zahra and Zein are watching a nature program[1] with their parents. It's a very interesting program[2]. It's all about hippos.

زهرة وزين يشاهدان برنامج عن الطبيعة مع والديهما. إنه برنامج شيق جدًا. إنه عن فرس النهر.

1



"I love animals," says Zahra. "I want to be a vet when I'm older." "That's a great idea[3]," says Mom. "A vet is a very important job. What about you, Zein? Do you want to be a vet?"

"I don't think so" says Zein.

تقول زهرة أنا أحب الحيوانات. اريد أن أصبح طبيبة بيطرية عندما أكبر. وتقول لها الأم إنها فكرة رائعة. مهنة الطبيب البيطري هامة جدًا. وماذا عنك يا زين؟ هل تريد أن تصبح طبيب بيطري؟ ويرد زين لا أعتقد ذلك.

1- a nature program	برنامج عن الطبيعة	3- a great idea	فكرة رائعة
2- interesting program	برنامج شيق		



2

"What do you want to be, then?" asks Dad. "A doctor?"
"Or a dentist?" asks Mom.
"I don't know," says Zein. I just can't decide![1]."

يسأل الأب زين اذا ماذا تريد ان تصبح؟ وتسأله الام طبيب ام طبيب اسنان؟
يقول زين لا أعلم. لا استطيع ان اقرر.



3

"I know," says Mom. "Why don't you both go and stay with Uncle Sami?" He has lots of friends. You can find out[2] about their jobs. "Then you can decide, Zein." "That's a great idea," says Dad.

وتقول له الأم اتفهم ذلك. لما لا تذهبا وتقيما عند العم سامي؟ فلديه الكثير من الأصدقاء.
يمكن أن تعرفا عن وظائفهم. وحينها يمكن ان تقرر يا زين. ويقول الأب هذه فكرة رائعة.

1- decide يقرر	2- find out يعرف / يكتشف

4



Uncle Sami is a taxi driver. On the first day of their visit,[1] he takes the children to see his friend Adel. Adel is a vet. He works in a nature reserve[2].

العم سامي يعمل سائق تاكسي. أخذ العم سامي الأطفال في اليوم الأول لزيارتهم ليروا صديقه عادل. عادل يعمل طبيب بيطري، في محمية طبيعية.



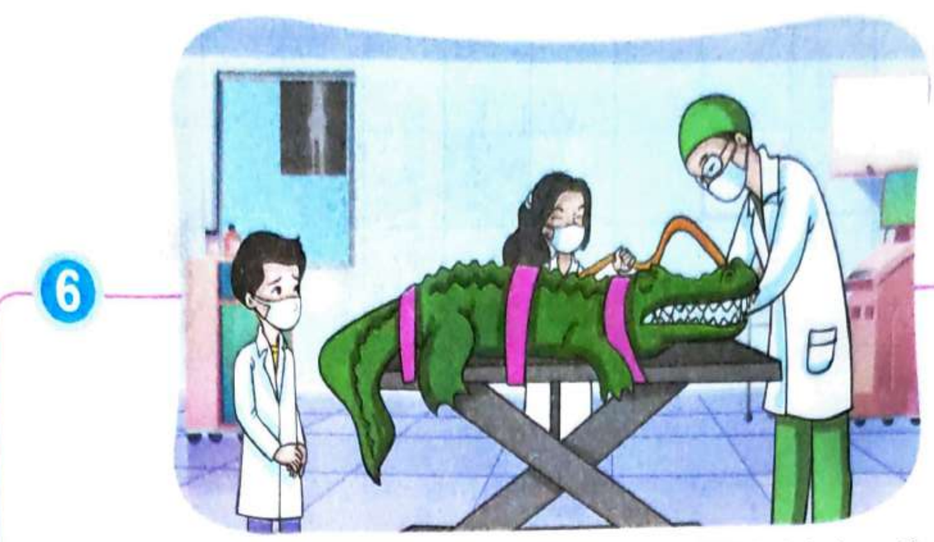
5

"This is Zahra and Zein," says Uncle Sami. "Zahra wants to be a vet." "Great!' says Adel." "Come on then. You can both help me with the crocodiles."

يقول العم سامي هذه زهرة وهذا زين. زهرة تريد أن تصبح طبيبة بيطرية.

يقول عادل رائع، إذاً تعالوا، يمكن أن تساعداني في العمل مع التماسيح.

1- visit	زيارة	2- nature reserve	محمية طبيعية



6

One of the crocodiles has something in its **stomach**[1]. Adel gives the crocodile some **medicine**[2] for it to sleep.
"It's **asleep**[3] now," Adel says. Then he puts his hand into the crocodile's mouth.

أحد التماسيح لديه شيء ما في معدته، يعطى عادل التمساح بعض الأدوية حتى ينام.
يقول عادل إنه نائم الآن، ثم يضع عادل يده داخل فم التمساح.

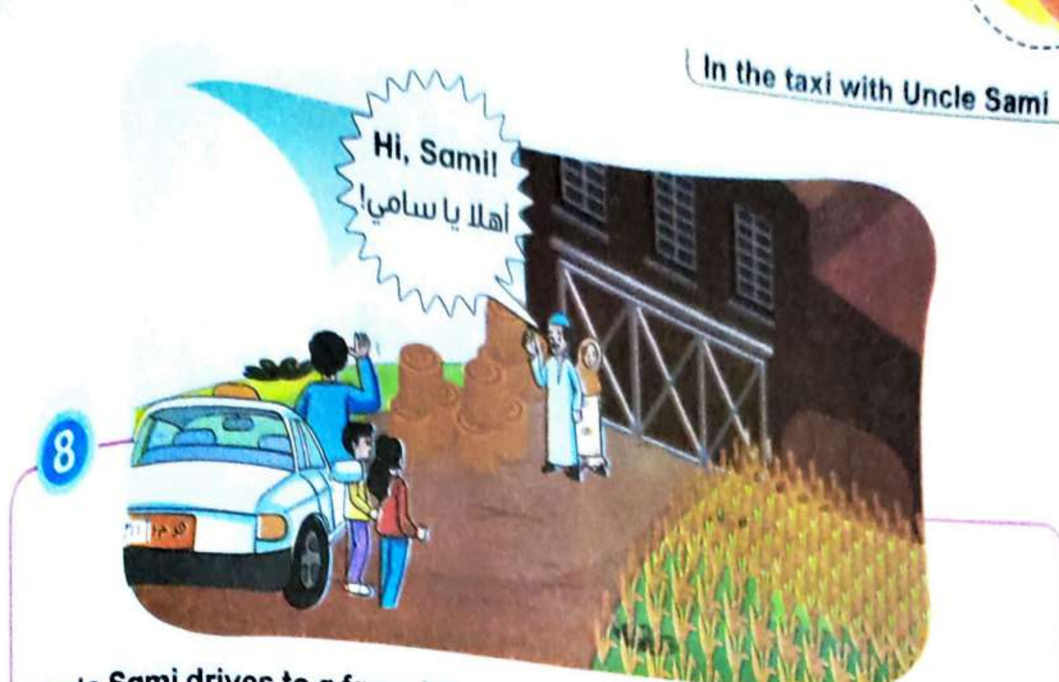


7

"Look," says Adel. "It's a plastic bottle. People shouldn't throw garbage. It's dangerous for the animals." "What's the matter, Zein?" asks Zahra. "I love animals, says Zein, but I don't want to be a vet."

يقول عادل انظرا، إنها زجاجة بلاستيكية. لا يجب أن يرمي الناس القمامة، فذلك خطير على الحيوانات. وتسأل زهرة ما المشكلة يا زين؟ يقول زين أنا أحب الحيوانات لكن لا أريد أن أصبح طبيب بيطري.

1- stomach	معدة	2- medicine	دواء
3- asleep	نائم		



8

Uncle Sami drives to a farm. "Come and meet my friend, Fayez, and his wife Mervat," he says.
"They look after[1] animals, too. You can help on their farm."

يقود العم سامي سيارته إلى مزرعة، يقول العم سامي تعالى يا زهرة أنت وزين وقابلا صديقي فايز وزوجته مرفت. هم يعتنوا بالحيوانات أيضًا. يمكن أن تساعداهما في مزرعتهما.



9

First of all, the children help Mervat with the animals. There are some baby goats without mothers. Mervat and Zahra mix some special[2] milk. Zein feeds the babies with a bottle.

في البداية ساعد الطفلين مرفت في العمل مع الحيوانات، يوجد بعض من صغيرات الماعز بدون أمهاتهم.

تقوم مرفت وزهرة بخلط بعض من الألبان الخاصة. يطعم زين صغيرات الماعز من زجاجة.

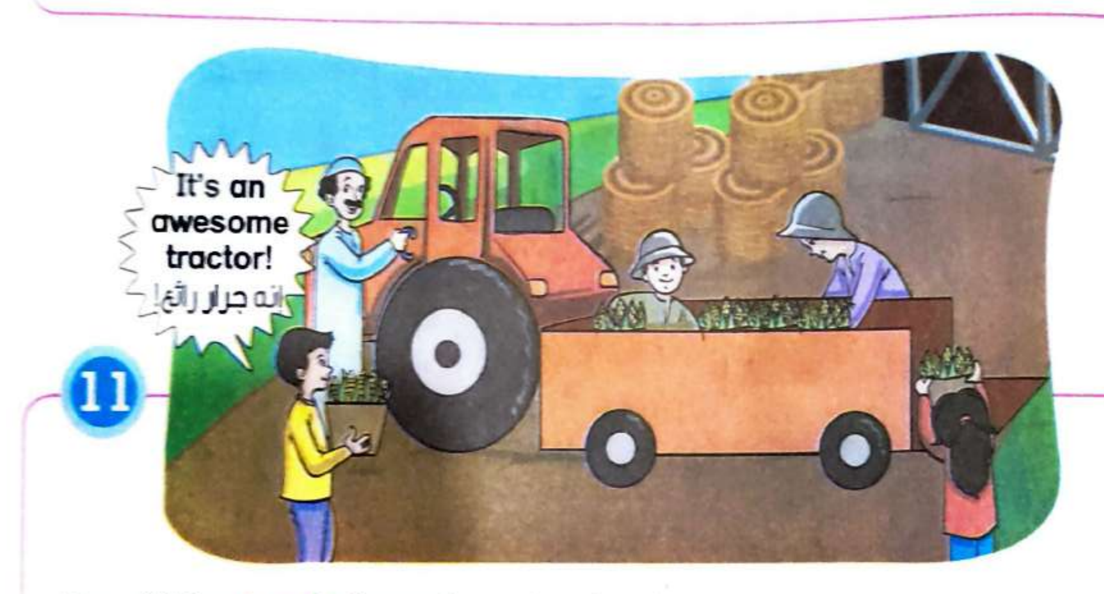
1- look after	يعتني بـ	2- special	خاص



10

Then they help with the maize.[1] The maize plants are growing tall and strong and the maize is nice and yellow. The children pick lots of maize. It's hard work!

ثم ساعد الأطفال في العمل في حقل الذرة. تنمو نباتات الذرة وتصبح طويلة وقوية والذرة صفراء وجميلة. يقطف الأطفال الكثير من الذرة، إنه عمل شاق.



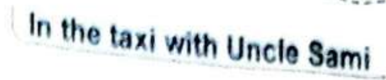
11

The children load[2] the maize onto a tractor.

"Can I drive the tractor?" asks Zein. Fayez laughs. "No, I'm sorry," he says.

يعبئ الأطفال الذرة على الجرار. يقول زين هل يمكن أن أقود الجرار؟ يضحك فايز ويقول لا أنا آسف.

1- maize	ذرة	2- load	يشحن / يعبئ



12



The next morning, Zahra is playing on her phone. Uncle Sami, has an idea. "Do you like computer games, Zein?" he asks. "Yes," says Zein. "Computer games are awesome[1]!"

وفي الصباح التالي تلعب زهرة على هاتفها. لدى العم سامي فكرة، حيث يسأل العم سامي: هل تحب ألعاب الكمبيوتر يا زين؟ يقول زين ألعاب الكمبيوتر رائعة.

13



Uncle Sami's cousin Faten is a software engineer[2]. She designs computer programs. The children go to her office.
"You can test these new games," says Faten. The children have a lot of fun.

تعمل فاتن ابنة خال العم سامي مهندسة برمجيات. حيث تصمم برامج الكمبيوتر، يذهب الأطفال إلى مكتبها. تقول فاتن يمكن ان تختبر هذه الألعاب الجديدة ويستمتع الأطفال بوقتهما.

1- awesome	رائعة	2- software engineer	مهندسة برمجيات

14



Zein has an idea for a game. It's a puzzle[1] game. He draws some ideas, but it isn't easy. Zein isn't happy with his game. "Oh dear!" he says, "I love games and puzzles, but I don't want to be a software engineer."

لدى زين فكرة بخصوص لعبة، إنها لعبة ألغاز. هو يرسم بعض الأفكار لكنها ليست سهلة. زين غير سعيد بلعبته.

يقول زين يا إلهي: أنا أحب الألعاب والألغاز لكن لا أريد أن أصبح مهندس برمجيات.

15



"It's OK," says Uncle Sami. "Come and meet my friend Basem. He's a plumber.[2]"

"A plumber?" says Zahra.

يقول العم سامي حسنًا: تعالى يا زهرة وانت يا زين وقابلا صديقي باسم، هو يعمل سباك.

وتسأل زهرة سباك؟

1- puzzle	لعبة الغاز	2- plumber	سباك

16



Basem is in Mr Sameh's apartment. He is fixing some pipes[1] under a sink[2]. The children help him. There are lots of pipes.
"It's like a puzzle!" says Zein.

باسم موجود في شقة السيد سامح، يقوم بتصليح بعض المواسير والحوض، ويساعده الأطفال.
هناك الكثير من المواسير. يقول زين إنها مثل الألغاز.

17



Something falls out of an old pipe. It's a ring.
"That's my wife's ring!" says Mr Sameh. "Thank you for finding it."
"You're welcome," says Basem. "It's all part of the job."

يسقط شيء من ماسورة قديمة، إنه خاتم، يقول السيد سامح إنه خاتم زوجتي.
أشكرك لإيجاده، يرد باسم العفو، إنه جزء من عملي.

1- pipes	مواسير	2- sink	حوض



18

That night,Uncle Sami drives the children home in his taxi. They are both happy and tired.

يوصل العم سامي الطفلين في تلك الليلة إلى المنزل في التاكسي الخاص به، إنهما سعيدان ومتعبان.



19

"Do you know what you want to be now, Zein?" asks Dad.
"Yes, I do," says Zein. "I want to be like Uncle Sami. He has got the best job.He goes to so many interesting places. I want to be a taxi driver!."

يسأل الأب هل تعلم الآن ماذا تريد أن **تصبح**؟ يقول زين نعم أريد أن أصبح مثل العم سامي. لديه أفضل وظيفة، هو **يذهب** إلى أماكن رائعة كثيرة، أريد أن أصبح سائق تاكسي.

Activities



1 Look and write:

انظر واكتب (كالمثال)

Adel - Basem - Faten - Fayez - Dad - Mervat
Mom - Mr. Sameh - Uncle Sami - Zahra - Zein

1 

Zahra

2 

....

3 

....

4 

....

5 

....

6 

....

7 

....

8 

....

9 

....

10 

....

11 

....

2 Read and write T (true) or F (false):

انظر واكتب صح أم خطأ

1. Uncle Sami is a bus driver. (   )
2. Zahra wants to be a software engineer. (   )
3. Zein feeds goats on the farm. (   )
4. The plumber helps Mr Sameh. (   )
5. Zein wants to be a vet. (   )

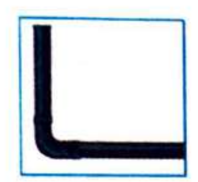
Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

3 Read, find and write:

اقرأ وأوجد واكتب

1. This is a yellow vegetable. ....maize....
2. This is a large machine which a farmer uses. ....
3. This is one of the most dangerous animals in the world. ....
4. We use this to wash vegetables in the kitchen. ....
5. This is a doctor for animals. ....
6. This is a place where animals can live safely. ....
7. This animal is a big reptile with (من الزواحف) sharp teeth. ....
8. Oil or water can travel in this. ....
9. This is a game. You solve a problem to win the game. ....
10. This is Uncle Sami's job. ....







n	u	e	a	y	t	r	a	c	t	o	r
a	m	c	v	i	r	i	u	b	w	z	n
t	s	e	l	e	c	a	o	t	m	k	t
u	x	k	h	i	r	f	z	p	t	n	a
r	s	a	n	s	o	t	s	i	n	k	x
e	g	o	p	l	c	t	r	p	a	n	i
r	h	i	c	n	o	y	u	e	f	o	d
e	r	f	u	a	d	s	l	o	x	u	r
s	l	x	m	d	i	g	l	i	m	t	i
e	c	s	a	r	l	o	d	j	f	e	v
r	t	a	i	k	e	s	h	r	d	p	e
v	p	u	z	z	l	e	a	c	t	w	r
e	n	v	e	t	c	p	m	p	y	b	d
o	r	j	o	e	o	t	w	e	z	r	g
s	d	n	k	i	b	h	i	p	p	o	h

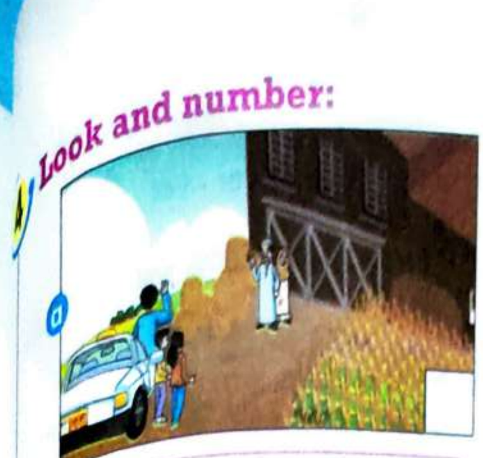






4 Look and number:

انظر ورقم:



a

'Come and meet my friend, Fayez, and his wife Mervat,'



b

Basem is in Mr Sameh's apartment. He is fixing some pipes under a sink.



c

'You can try these new games,' says Faten.



d

Uncle Sami drives the children home in his taxi.



e

'Great!' says Adel. 'Come on then. You can both help me with the crocodiles.'



f

1

Zahra and Zein are watching a nature program with their parents.

5 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Zahra wants to be	a. what he wants to be.
2 Zein doesn't know	b. to be a software engineer.
3 Uncle Sami takes the children	c. Mervat with the animals.
4 Zahra and Zein help	d. a vet.
5 Zein wants to	e. to see his friends.
6 Zein doesn't want	f. drive the tractor.

6 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

farmer - plumber - software engineer - taxi driver - vet

1. A ..plumber.......... helps people because he/she can fix problems with sinks, pipes and faucets.
2. A .... helps people because he/she grows food and raises animals.
3. A .... helps people because he/she takes people where they need to go.
4. A .... helps people because he/she looks after their pets and farm animals.
5. A .... helps people because he/she designs computer programs and video games.

7 Read and answer:

اقرأ وأجب:



1. What is Adel's job?

----

2. What did Adel find in the crocodile's stomach?

----

3. What can we do to look after animals? Write three ideas.

----

8 Ask and answer about the story. Use the words in the box:

اسأل وأجب على القصة باستخدام الكلمات كالمثال:

How - What - When - Where - Why

What is Uncle Sami's job?







9 Zein and Zahra write an email to their grandma and grandpa. Read and complete the email.

اقرأ وأكمل الإيميل:

Hi Grandma and Grandpa,

Last week we visited Uncle Sami. He has lots of friends. We met them and learned about their jobs.

We met ....

We saw ....

We ....

Zahra liked ....

Zein liked ....

....

It was fun visiting Uncle Sami

See you soon.

Zein and Zahra

10 Work with a partner. Think and say. What can we learn from the story? ما الذى يمكن أن تتعلمه من القصة؟ فكر وقل انت وزميلك:

11 Zein had a problem. What was it? How did he solve it? Look and complete: زين لديه مشكلة ما هى؟ كيف حلها؟ انظر وأكمل:

What was Zein's problem?

↓

What was Mom's idea?

↓

What jobs did Zein and Zahra try?

↓

What is Zein's answer?

---

12 What happens in the story? Look and say:

ماذا حدث في القصة؟ انظر وقل كما في المثال:

a

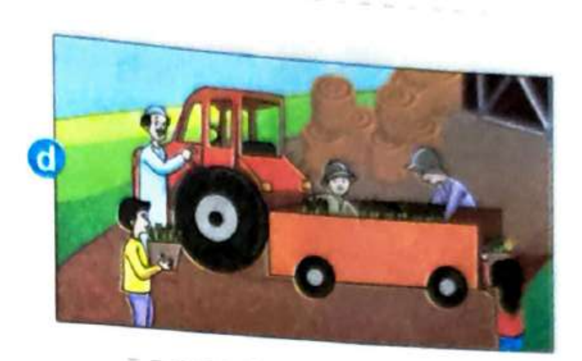

Zahara and Zein are watching TV with their parents.

b


- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

c


- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

d


- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

e


- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

f


- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

f


- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

13 What happens in the story? Look again and write:

ماذا حدث في القصة؟ أنظر مرة أخرى واكتب :

- -

- -

- -

General Activities 1

1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(straight - hospital - can - much)

Hany : Excuse me. Can you help me?

Ramy : Yes, I ❶ ....

Hany : Where's the ❷ .... ?

Ramy : Go ❸ .... ahead. It's on the left

Hany : Thank you so ❹ ....

2 Complete the sentences:

أكمل الجمل:



❶ A .... works on a farm.



❷ I respect the ....



❸ My father always carried a ....



❹ The food goes down the ....

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A

1. She lives in
2. How fast
3. That's a great
4. Zahra wants to be

B

a. does electricity travel?
b. idea.
c. a vet.
d. a city.
e. day.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I love my town. It is small, but it has stores, offices, schools, and many other places. It is a good place to live. I walk to school every morning. My school is next to the hospital. Next to the hospital, there's a park. I often play football in the park with my friends.

A- Answer the following questions:

1- Is your town big?

2- How do you go to school?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 The school is behind the hospital.		
4 I play football with my friends.		

5 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

carbon dioxide - nose - dining - catch - post office

1. We have lunch in the .... room .
2. Fishermen .... the fish.
3. We send letters and packages at the ....
4. We breathe through our ....
5. Plants take ....

Activities 1

6 **Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... delivers letters .

ⓐ mail carrier ⓑ builder ⓒ plumber

2. The elephant is the .... animal.

ⓐ big ⓑ bigger ⓒ biggest

3. The electrician gives us ....

ⓐ light ⓑ water ⓒ air

4. The tent is next .... the car.

ⓐ on ⓑ too ⓒ to

5. I like my friends .... teachers.

ⓐ but ⓑ because ⓒ and

7 **Rearrange the following to make sentences** أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل:

1. works - the - The mechanic - in - shop - repair.

- -

2. shouldn't - throw - People - garbage.

- -

3. Sami - to - a farm - drives - Uncle .

- -

4. like - Do - computer - you - games?

- -

8 **Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:**

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات:

Camels - sand - desert - strong - milk - tall - feet

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

General Activities 2

1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(snake - right - at - animals)

A : These ❶ .... live in our country

B : Look ❷ .... the crocodile. It's huge!

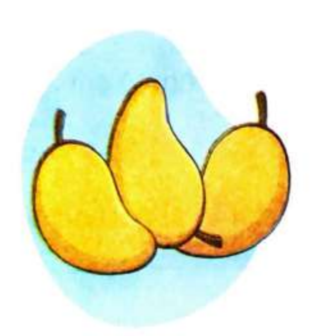
A : What about the ❸ .... ?

B : It's dangerous, isn't it ?

A : Yes, that's ❹ ....

2 Complete the sentences:

أكمل الجمل:



❶ I want some ....



❷ The .... digests food.



❸ Only use a ....



❹ I can drive a ....

Activities 2

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Camels can live	a. rice.
2 Farmers grow	b. ahead.
3 Go straight	c. pumps blood.
4 Our heart	d. heavy.
	e. without water for a long time.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

This is Hesham. He works at the supermarket near my house. My family and I see him every day when we buy food. He helps us when we can't find something. He is very kind and happy.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Who works at the supermarket?

----

2. Is Hesham very kind and sad?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 My family and I see Hesham every week.		
4 Hesham helps us when we can't find something.		

5 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

but - pelican - oxygen - fennec - red

1. Tomatoes are green and ....
2. The ....fox lives in the desert.
3. I don't eat candy, ... I like fruit.
4. The .... eats small fish.
5. People need .... to breathe.

6 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The museum is in front .... the school.
   a) to b) of c) with
2. Never .... anything electric with wet hands.
   a) swim b) touch c) grow
3. The bear has ....
   a) a beak b) claws c) feather
4. The rihm gazelle has long ....
   a) horns b) beak c) nose
5. My cat is the .... on our street.
   a) big b) biggest c) bigger

7 Rearrange the following to make sentences أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل:

1. seeds - Some - can stick - an animal's - to - fur.

----

2. studies - the ground - A geologist - the rocks - and.

----

3. catch - thousands - Fishermen - fish - of .

----

4. safe - makes - A builder - strong - the walls - and.

----

8 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات:

fennec fox - desert - ears - big - fur - warm

Activities 3

General Activities 3

1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(things - camel - desert - strong)

A : Look at this animal. Do you know it?

B : Yes I do. It's the ❶ ....

A : Is it ❷ ....?

B : Yes, it is. It carries a lot of ❸ ....

A : Where does it live?

B : It lives in the ❹ ....

2 Complete the sentences:

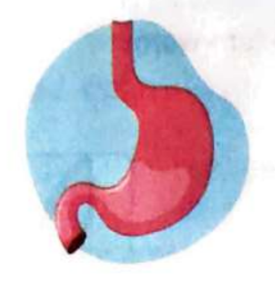




❶ They are my ....



❷ A .... eats fish.



❸ It's my ....



❹ He is a ....

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A		B
1 Diaphragm	a.	in open areas
2 Eagles live	b.	removes waste
3 The pelican	c.	This is a muscle under the lungs.
4 The large intestine	d.	eats fish
	e.	water

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

My name is Khaled. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is the biggest in the village. It's between a yellow house and a blue house. There are trees behind the house. There is a big garden in front of it.

A- Answer the following questions:

1 - Where does Khaled live?

....

2 - What is in front of the house?

....

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 The house is very small.		
4 There is a big garden in front of the house.		

5 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

Farmers - apartment - renewable - next - scary

1. Wind, water and the sun are .... energy.
2. The hospital is .... to the school.
3. I live in an ....
4. The snake is ....
5. .... grow tomatoes and potatoes.

Activities 3

6 **Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. The giraffe is the .... animal in the zoo.

   a tall b taller c tallest

2. I buy clothes and shoes from a / an ....

   a office b hospital c shopping mall

3. A mechanic .... cars or buses.

   a buys b fixes c teaches

4. We .... the plant every day.

   a water b connect c burn

5. .... make the plant green.

   a Roots b Chloroplasts c Soil

7 **Rearrange the following to make sentences** أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل:

1. tomake - Papyrus - Ancient - Egyptians - Paper - used.

   ....

2. do - you - Where - live ?

   ....

3. is - the daisy - The rose - than - taller.

   ....

4. fox - is - The fennec - centimeters - long - 30.

   ....

8 **Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:**

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات:

important - sources - produce- the wind - renewable

....

....

....

....

....

General Activities 4

1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(electricity - amazing - job - do)

A : What's your father's ❶ .... ?

B : My father is an electrician .

A : What does he ❷ .... ?

B : He connects the ❸ .... so you can use the lights .

A : It's an ❹ .... job.

2 Complete the sentences:



أكمل الجمل:



❶ They are my ....



❷ It's a ....

❸ It's a ....

❹ They are ....

Activities 4

3 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 A plumber	a. builds the schools.
2 The builder	b. is a special plant.
3 Papyrus	c. connects the pipes.
4 Camels can live	d. without water for a long time.
	e. about 1 kilogram.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed lives in a village near Tanta. His village is very small, but it has a lot of shops and stores. Ahmed's school is next to the hospital. He plays football in the afternoon in the sports club. The sports club is near the supermarket.

A- Answer the following questions:

1 - Where is the sports club?

----

2 - Where does Ahmed live?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 Ahmed's school is behind the hospital.		
4 Ahmed's village is near Tanta.		

5 Read and complete: اقرأ وأكمل:

Egypt - driver - tourism - teacher - solar

1. The guide works in the .... industry.
2. A .... works in a school.
3. A .... drives buses.
4. We need .... farms to produce electricity.
5. .... is very famous for its cotton.

6 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The snake is the .... animal.

   a scary b scarier c scariest

2. I live in an apartment with a ....

   a balcony b farm c club

3. The fennec fox lives in the ....

   a house b tent c desert

4. .... are plumbers.

   a This b These c That

5. The plant cells are very ....

   a big b small c long

7 Rearrange the following to make sentences أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل:

1. Where - post - is - the - office?

- -

2. town - houses - has - The old - beautiful.

- -

3. delivers - A mail - letters - carrier - your.

- -

4. the - suitcase - have - I - heaviest.

- -

8 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات:

house - live - living room - bathroom - dining room - bedroom

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

General Activities 5

1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(sounds - room - fantastic - apartment)

Nahla : Look at our new ❶ ....!

Hoda : It's ❷ ....!

Nahla : Which is your favorite ❸ ....?

Hoda : For me it's my bedroom.

Nahla : My favorite is the living room with the balcony.

Hoda : That ❹ .... good!

2 Complete the sentences:


أكمل الجمل:



❶ The .... fixes cars and buses.



❷ I buy food from the ....



❸ Mom cooks food in the ....

❹ The .... is beautiful.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I live in	a. your school?
2 Where is	b. ahead.
3 Go straight	c. the walls strong.
4 A builder makes	d. letters.
	e. a village.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Ihab. I'm fifty years old. I wake up very early every day, I go out on my boat and fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.

A- Answer the following questions:

1 - How old is Ihab?

---

2 - Does Ihab wake up very early?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Ihab is a good fisherman.		
2 Ihab sells his fish at the park.		

5 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

biggest - seeds - plant - Earth - eat

1. We take coal, oil, and gas from the ....
2. Customers buy and .... the fish.
3. Papyrus is a very special .... that grows in the Nile Delta.
4. Tomatoes have .... inside.
5. The elephant is the .... animal.

Activities 5

6 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... help sick people.
   - a Teachers
   - b Doctors
   - c Builders
2. In a storm we see a flash of ....
   - a shock
   - b lightning
   - c solar
3. A plant is made of millions of ....
   - a water
   - b air
   - c cells
4. Hoda is.................................... than Israa.
   - a tall
   - b taller
   - c tallest
5. The cleaners keep the school ....
   - a dirty
   - b old
   - c clean

7 Rearrange the following to make sentences أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل:

1. electricity - connects - An electrician - the.

---

2. people - Do - like - you - helping?

---

3. behind - a plant - There's - couch - the.

---

4. shouldn't - throw - People - garbage.

---

8 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات:

Egypt - famous - cotton - bedsheets - towels - world - Egyptian cotton

---

General Activities 6

1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(Africa - grow - chocolate - tree)

A : What are you eating?

B : I'm eating ❶ ....

A : Where does chocolate come from?

B : It comes from the cacao ❷ ....

A : Where does cacao tree ❸ ....

B : It grows in ❹ ....

2 Complete the sentences:

أكمل الجمل:



❶ I live in a ....



❷ It's a ....



❸ He is an ....



❹ I like to eat ....

Activities 6

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A

1. My aunt moved
2. How can we
3. Never put anything
4. Put green plants

B

a. use electricity safely?
b. to a new hause.
c. into a socket.
d. in your balcony.
e. through our nose.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I love camels. They are strong. They can carry a lot of things like people and heavy things. They are tall animals.. Camels are very useful animals. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes. They can walk on sand in the desert.

A- Answer the following questions:

1 - Why are camels useful?

----

2 - Where can camels walk?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 Camels are short animals.		
4 Camels' milk is delicious.		

5 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

maize - tents - seeds - socket - digest

1. The electrician fixes the ....
2. We use our digestive system to .... food.
3. Tomatoes have .... inside.
4. We grow .... on our farm.
5. The people in the desert live in ....

6 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A What is your favorite .... ? **B**: Bedroom.

   a food   b subject   c room

2. The .... studies the ground and rocks.

   a teacher   b electrician   c geologist

3. A .... works in a school.

   a dentist   b librarian   c farmer

4. The giraffeis .... than the horse.

   a tall   b taller   c tallest

5. Papyrus is a very special ....

   a animal   b fruit   c plant

7 Rearrange the following to make sentences أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل:

1. makes - What - green - plant - the?

   ----

2. speak - can - English - Sherif - Chinese - and.

   ----

3. helps - get - Who - you - time - on - school - to?

   ----

4. likes - summer - He - much - very - the.

   ----

8 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words: اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات:

mail carrier - walks - speaks - healthy - likes



General Activities 7

1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(like - rice - produce - do)

Amr : What's your favorite food?

Hani : My favorite food is chicken and ❶ ------------------------

Amr : Do you ❷ ------------------------ mangoes?

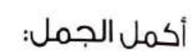
Hani : Yes, I ❸ ------------------------

Amr : What foods do we ❹ ------------------------ in Egypt?

Hani : We produce vegetables and fruits.

2 Complete the sentences:

أكمل الجمل:







❶ We grow ....

❷ I like .... in my salad.







❸ It's a ....

❹ He is a ....

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A		B
1 The plant cells		a. catches fish
2 The mechanic works		b. are renewable energy sources
3 The fisherman		c. in the repair shop
4 Wind and coal		d. are very small
		e. are non-renewable energy sources.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

There are different jobs in our country. The builders build the school. The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The cleaners keep the school clean. The bus drivers bring the children to school. The garbage collectors take away our garbage.

A- Answer the following questions:

1 - Who builds the school?

---

2 - Why do plumbers connect the pipes?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
3 The drivers keep the school clean.		
4 The garbage collectors take away our garbage.		

اقرأ وأكمل:

5 Read and complete:

more - taller - but - blood - and

1. The heart pumps the .... around our body.
2. I don't eat candy, ... I like fruit.
3. Crocodiles are .... dangerous than dolphins.
4. Amr is .... than Khaled.
5. I play basketball .... I play football in the park.

Activities 7

6 **Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. My cat is the .... on our street.
   a big   b bigger   c biggest
2. The hospital is .... to the school.
   a on   b between   c next
3. Talia .... in an apartment.
   a live   b lives   c are living
4. We breathe in air through our ....
   a heart   b nose   c ears
5. We have two ...., they are inside the body.
   a noses   b heads   c lungs

7 **Rearrange the following to make sentences** أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل:

1. it - for - Let's - have - lunch.

....

2. lots - buy - I - books - new - of.

....

3. room - My - is - the - living room - favorite.

....

4. catch - thousands - fish - Fishermen - of.

....

8 **Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:**

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات:

fishermen - wake up - boat - catch fish - sell - restaurants - delicious

....

....

....

....

....

General Activities 8

1 Complete the following dialogue with words in brackets:

أكمل المحادثة بكلمات من بين الأقواس:

(delicious - right - eating - grapes)

A : What are you ❶ ....?

B : I'm eating ❷ ....

A : I think grapes are ❸ ....

B : Yes, that's ❹ ....

2 Complete the sentences


أكمل الجمل:



❶ This is a ....



❷ A thousand million is a ....



❸ This is the ....



❹ I live on a ....

Activities 8

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A		B
1 Diaphragm		a. removes waste.
2 Lungs		b. is a muscle under the lungs.
3 100,000		c. pushes the blood.
4 The large intestine		d. We have two of these inside the body.
		e. A hundred thousand.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there is a beach and there are a lot of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of toursits go on safaris.

A- Answer the following questions:

1 - What can tourists do in the Sahara Desert?

----

2 - How many people live there?

B- Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
3	Hurghada is in the east of Egypt.		
4	Hurghada is on the Red Sea.		

5 Read and complete:

اقرأ وأكمل:

build - salary - grow - energy - tallest

1. Workers use their .... to buy food.
2. Farmers .... the food.
3. The builders .... our houses.
4. The wind is a renewable ....
5. The giraffe is the ....animal.

6 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Sherif can .... English.
   - a speak
   - b speaks
   - c speaking
2. A: .... lives in Tanta? **B:** Mariam.
   - a Where
   - b What
   - c Who
3. Electricity .... dangerous.
   - a is
   - b are
   - c do
4. Ahmed is .... than Yara.
   - a tallest
   - b taller
   - c tall
5. The boy is .... He didn't pass the test.
   - a disappeared
   - b disobeyed
   - c disappointed

7 Rearrange the following to make sentences أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل:

1. most - is - The rose - beautiful - flower - the.

- -

2. seeds - can - Some - on - water - float.

- -

3. often - electricity - We - waste - a lot of.

- -

4. does - Where - Sherif - live?

- -

8 Write Five (5) sentences using the following words:

اكتب خمس جمل باستخدام الكلمات:

bus driver - wakes up - takes - helps - amazing

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -